CLASSIFICATION OF WATER RESOURCES AND DETERMINATION OF THE COMPREHENSIVE RESERVE AND RESOURCE QUALITY OBJECTIVES IN THE MVOTI TO UMZIMKULU WMA

Volume 2c: Mhlali Estuary Ecological Consequences

Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/0714

December 2014

Copyright reserved

No part of this publication may be reproduced in any manner Without full acknowledgement of the source

REFERENCE

This report is to be referred to in bibliographies as:

Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Volume 2c: Mhlali Estuary Ecological Consequences Prepared by: CSIR.

DOCUMENT INDEX

| Index Number | DWA Report Number | Report Title |
|-----------------|---|---|
| 1 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/0112 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Inception report |
| 2 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/0113 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Status quo assessment, IUA and biophysical node delineation and identification. |
| 3 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/0213 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: River Resource Units and EWR sites |
| 4 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/0313 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Desktop Estuary EcoClassification and EWR |
| 5 | Rive | ers EWR report Volumes |
| 5.1 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/0114 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Volume 1: EWR estimates of the River Desktop Biophysical Nodes |
| 5.2 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/0214 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Volume 2: EcoClassification and EWR assessment at the Rapid III level |
| 5.3 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/0314 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Volume 3: EcoClassification and EWR assessment at the Comprehensive and Intermediate levels |
| 5.4 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/0414 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Volume 4: Specialist appendices |
| 6 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/0212 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: BHNR |
| 7 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/0514 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Water Resource Analysis Report |
| 8 | Operational Scenario | o and Management Class report volumes |

| 8.1 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/0614 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Volume 1: River Ecological Consequences |
|------|---|---|
| 8.2 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/0714 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Volume 2: Mhlali Estuary Ecological Consequences |
| 8.3 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/0814 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Volume 3: Estuary ecological consequences - specialist appendices (available electronically only) |
| 8.4 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/0914 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Volume 4: Economic consequences |
| 8.5 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/1014 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Volume 5: EGSA consequences |
| 8.6 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/1214 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Volume 6: Water quality consequences |
| 8.7 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/1314 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Volume 7: Recommended Management Classes. |
| 9 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/0115 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Stakeholder Report |
| 10 | Resource Q | uality Objectives report volumes |
| 10.1 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/0215 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Volume 1: Rivers and Wetlands EcoSpecs and TPCs |
| 10.2 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/0315 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Volume 2: Resource Water Quality Objectives and Groundwater RQOs |
| 11 | Report Number: RDM/WMA11/00/CON/CLA/0415 | Classification of Water Resources and Determination of the Comprehensive Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives in the Mvoti to Umzimkulu WMA: Main report |

DEPARTMENT OF WATER AFFAIRS CHIEF DIRECTORATE: RESOURCE DIRECTED MEASURES

CLASSIFICATION OF WATER RESOURCES AND DETERMINATION OF THE COMPREHENSIVE RESERVE AND RESOURCE QUALITY OBJECTIVES IN THE MVOTI TO UMZIMKULU WMA

MHLALI ESTUARY ECOCLASSIFICATION AND EWR REPORT

Approved for CSIR by:

.....

Delana Louw Project Manager Date

DEPARTMENT OF WATER AFFAIRS (DWA) Approved for DWS by:

.....

Chief Director: Water Ecosystems

..... Date

AUTHORS

The following members of the study team authored this report:

| Specialist | Affiliation | Area of responsibility |
|------------------|---|---------------------------------|
| Ms L van Niekerk | CSIR, Stellenbosch Ivnieker@csir.co.za | Project coordinator / Report |
| | | preparation/ Physical processes |
| Dr S Taljaard | CSIR, Stellenbosch <u>staljaar@csir.co.za</u> | Water quality |
| Prof G Bate | Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University | Microalgae |
| Prof J Adams | Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University | Macrophytes |
| Mrs N Forbes | Marine and Estuarine Research | Invertebrates |
| Mr S Weerts | CSIR, Durban sweerts@csir.co.za | Fish |
| Dr D Allan | Durban Natural Science Museum | Birds |

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Ms Jane Mogaswa, Department of Water and Sanitation for providing water level data and graphs on the Mhlali Estuary.

Comments received from DWS:

REPORT SCHEDULE

| Version | Date |
|-------------|---------------|
| First draft | November 2014 |
| | |
| | |
| | |

INTRODUCTION

Study Area

The mouth of the Mhlali River is approximately 68 km north of Durban. The Mhlali Estuary is classified as a "Temporarily open/closed" type estuary as it mouth closes from time to time depending on river inflow (Whitfield 1992). For the purposes of this EWR study, the geographical boundaries of the estuary are defined as follows:

| Downstream boundary: | Estuary mouth 29°27'41.37"S, 31°16'37.04"E |
|----------------------|--|
| Upstream boundary: | 29°26'40.83"S, 31°14'58.85"E |
| Lateral boundaries: | 5 m contour above Mean Sea Level (MSL) along each bank |



Geographical boundaries of the Mhlali Estuary based on the Estuary Functional Zone

Present Ecological Status

The Estuarine Health Index (EHI) scores allocated to the various abiotic and biotic health parameters for the Mhlali Estuary and the overall Present Ecological Status (PES) for the system are calculated from the overall EHI score (see below). The EHI score for the Mhlali Estuary in its present state was estimated to be 57 (i.e. 57% similar to natural condition), which translates into a Present Ecological Status (PES) of Category D. The PES is mostly attributed to the following factors:

- Increase nutrient input as a result of Waste Water Treatment Works (WWTW) and poor catchments practises, causing excessive growth of reed and aquatic invasive plants in intertidal and subtidal habitats;
- Significant loss of habitat in the Estuary Functional Zone as a result of sugar cane farming; and
- Artificial breaching of the estuary mouth at lower than natural levels.

The Mhlali Estuary is on a steep trajectory downwards as significant further deterioration in estuary health is anticipated once the Shakaskraal WWTW runs at full capacity and the Tinley Manor WWTW (planned for 2015) discharges into the estuary. See Chapter 7 for more detail.

Estuarine Health Score for the Mhlali Estuary

| | Estuarine health score | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------------|------|--|--|--|--|
| Variable | Overall | Excluding flow related pressures | Conf | | | | |
| Hydrology | 62 | 62 | L | | | | |
| Hydrodynamics and mouth condition | 80 | 80 | L | | | | |
| Water quality | 62.2 | 62.2 | L | | | | |
| Physical habitat alteration | 60 | 98 | L | | | | |
| Habitat health score | 66 | 76 | | | | | |
| Microalgae | 50 | 100 | L | | | | |
| Macrophytes | 51 | 90 | L/M | | | | |
| Invertebrates | 40 | 88 | L | | | | |
| Fish | 60 | 92 | L | | | | |
| Birds | 40 | 92 | L | | | | |
| Biotic health score | 48 | 92 | | | | | |
| ESTUARY HEALTH SCORE | 57 | 84 | | | | | |
| PRESENT ECOLOGICAL STATUS (PES) | D | В | | | | | |
| OVERALL CONFIDENCE | L | L | | | | | |

RELATIVE CONTRIBUTION OF FLOW AND NON-FLOW RELATED IMPACTS ON HEALTH

Estimates of the contribution of non-flow related impacts on the level of degradation of each component led to an adjusted health score of 84, which would raise the PES to a B Category. This suggests that non-flow impacts have played a significant role in the degradation of the estuary to a *D*, but that flow-related impacts are also one of the main causes of its degradation. **The highest priority is to address the quality of influent water**. Of the non-flow-related impacts, water quality problem as a result of the high nutrient load associated with the WWTWs and poor catchments practises was found to be the most important factor that influenced the health of the system. The excess nutrients in the inflowing water increased plant growth and loss of open intertidal and riparian habitat (e.g. sand and mudbanks that use to be important bird habitats). Low oxygen events that is associated with high nutrient and organic inputs reduce invertebrate abundance to 40 % of Reference Conditions and prevents the system from functioning as an effective fish nursery. Thus in turn, reducing food availability to birds.

Another key non-flow related pressure was the **loss of riparian area due to sugarcane farming** in the Estuary Functional Zone, causing a loss the habitat and loss of a buffer area against human disturbance.

OVERALL CONFIDENCE

Confidence levels were low for most of the abiotic components and biotic components. The overall confidence of the study was LOW.

ESTUARY IMPORTANCE

The Estuary Importance Score (EIS) takes size, the rarity of the estuary type within its biographical zone, habitat, biodiversity and functional importance of the estuary into account (see below). Biodiversity importance, in turn is based on the assessment of the importance of the estuary for plants, invertebrates, fish and birds, using rarity indices. The scores have been determined for all South African estuaries (DWA 2014), apart from functional importance, which is scored by the specialists in the workshop. Historically the Mhlali supported a very good diversity of fish species. This is reduced under present day conditions. Although the Mhlali is a relatively small system located on a section of coast with a relative abundance of estuaries, the nature of the system (bathymetry, mouth dynamics and resulting salinity regimes over different states) renders its nursery potential good. From a functional importance perspective, it can be considered of medium nursery value for estuarine associated fish species in the region.

The EIS for the Mhlali Estuary, is estimated to be 63, i.e., the estuary is rated as "Important".

| Criterion | Weight | Score |
|-----------------------------------|--------|-------|
| Estuary Size | 15 | 60 |
| Zonal Rarity Type | 10 | 10 |
| Habitat Diversity | 25 | 90 |
| Biodiversity Importance | 25 | 80 |
| Functional Importance | 25 | 70 |
| Weighted Estuary Importance Score | | 63 |

Estuarine Importance scores for the Mhlali Estuary

RECOMMENDED ECOLOGICAL CATEGORY

The Recommended Ecological Category (REC) represents the level of protection assigned to an estuary. The PES sets the minimum REC. The degree to which the REC needs to be elevated above the PES depends on the level of importance and level of protection or desired protection of a particular estuary.

Estuary protection status and importance, and the basis for assigning a Recommended Ecological Category

| Protection status and importance | REC | Policy basis | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Protected area | A | Protected and desired protected areas should be | | | | | |
| Desired Protected Area | A OF BAS | health | | | | | |
| Highly important | PES + 1, min B | Highly important estuaries should be in an A or B category | | | | | |

| Important | PES + 1, min C | Important estuaries should be in an A, B or C category |
|------------------------------|----------------|--|
| Of low to average importance | PES, min D | Estuaries to remain in a D category |

* BAS = Best Attainable State

The PES for the Mhlali Estuary is a D, with a steep downwards trajectory. The Mhlali Estuary is rated as "Important" from a biodiversity perspective and should therefore be in a C Category.

In addition, the system also forms part of the core set of priority estuaries in need of protection to achieve biodiversity targets in the National Estuaries Biodiversity Plan for the National Biodiversity Assessment. The NBA 2011 recommends that the minimum Category for the Mhlali be a B, that the system be a granted partial no-take protection, and that 50 % of the estuary margin be undeveloped.

Based on the above and the reversibility of impacts, the Recommended Ecological Category for the Mhlali Estuary is a B Category.

Ecological Categories associated with scenarios

The proposed scenarios for the Mhlali system are summarised below:

Summary of flow scenarios

| Scenarios | Description | MAR (X10 ⁶ m ³) | % Remaining |
|------------|--|--|-------------|
| Reference | Natural Flow | 56.31 | 100 |
| Present | Present day (+WWTW: Shakaskraal (0.8 Ml/d)) | 51.55 | 92 |
| Scenario 1 | Present, but without input from WWTW | 51.26 | 91 |
| Scenario 2 | Present day (WWTW: Shakaskraal (1.6 Ml/d) + Tinley Manor (6 Ml/d)) | 54.03 | 96 |
| Scenario 3 | Abstraction + WWTW (WWTW: Shakaskraal (1.6 Ml/d) + Tinley Manor (6 Ml/d)) | 46.94 | 83 |
| Scenario 4 | WWTW at full capacity (1.6 Ml/d + 18Ml/d) | 58.41 | 104 |
| Scenario 5 | Present minus WWTW, including remedial actions: rehab of flood plain, removal of old weir, no artificial breaching, no sugar cane farming in the Estuary Functional zone | 51.26 | 91 |

The estuary is currently in a D Category. An evaluation of the four scenarios provided the following insights:

- Under Scenario 1 the Mhlali Estuary will improve slightly in health to a C Category, as a result of improved water quality. This scenario represents the recent past before the varouis current and planned WWTW came on line.
- While, under Scenario 2 the estuary will deteriorate further in health by about 3% as a result of deteriorating water quality conditions.
- Under Scenario 3 the estuary will deteriorate significantly, by about 15 % as a result of severely deteriorating water quality conditions and reduce in river flow. Under this scenario

treated effluent become the dominant source of freshwater to the system under low to average inflow conditions.

• Under Scenario 4 the estuary will also deteriorate significantly, by about 14%, as a result of severely deteriorating water quality conditions and an increase in freshwater inflow associated with the maximum discharges to the system..

None of the scenarios (1 to 4) achieved the REC for the Mhlali Estuary. Therefore a sensitivity test, Scenario 5, was conducted. Scenario 5 is based on the freshwater inflow simulated for Scenario 1 in conjunction with the following management interventions:

- Reduce the nutrient input from the WWTW and catchment to control growth of reeds and aquatic invasive plants;
- Remove the sugarcane from the Estuary Functional Zone (below 5 m contour) to allow for a buffer against human disturbance and the development of a transitional vegetation ecotone between estuarine and terrestrial ecosystems;
- Removal of vegetation from main river channel in upper reaches, including invasive aliens plants and strands of eucalypts (using CoastCare programme);
- Ensure that the estuary is not artificial breached; and
- Remove the old saltwater weir from middle reaches of system.

| En score and corresponding Ecological categories under the unrerent fundit scenarios | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--------|----------------|----|----|----|----|----|------|--|
| Variable | Waight | Scenario Group | | | | | | | |
| vanable | weight | Present | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | Conf | |
| Hydrology | 25 | 62 | 72 | 97 | 65 | 73 | 72 | L | |
| Hydrodynamics and mouth condition | 25 | 80 | 80 | 87 | 70 | 93 | 80 | L | |
| Water quality | 25 | 62.2 | 74 | 49 | 42 | 47 | 74 | L | |
| Physical habitat alteration | 25 | 60 | 60 | 61 | 59 | 63 | 73 | L | |
| Habitat health score | | 66 | 71 | 74 | 59 | 55 | 75 | | |
| Microalgae | 20 | 50 | 55 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 70 | L | |
| Macrophytes | 20 | 51 | 53 | 49 | 40 | 48 | 70 | L | |
| Invertebrates | 20 | 40 | 45 | 30 | 20 | 30 | 80 | L | |
| Fish | 20 | 60 | 60 | 40 | 30 | 30 | 70 | L | |
| Birds | 20 | 40 | 45 | 30 | 20 | 25 | 60 | L | |
| Biotic health score | | 48 | 52 | 34 | 26 | 31 | 70 | | |
| ESTUARY HEALTH SCORE | | 57 | 62 | 54 | 42 | 43 | 72 | L | |
| ECOLOGICAL STATUS | | D | С | D | D | D | В | | |

Scenario 5 achieved the REC of a B.

EHI score and corresponding Ecological Categories under the different runoff scenarios

ECOLOGICAL FLOW REQUIREMENTS

The '**recommended Ecological Flow Requirement**' **scenario**, is defined as the flow scenario (or a slight modification thereof to address low-scoring components) that represents the highest change in river inflow that will still maintain the estuary in the REC. Where any component of the health score is less than 40, then modifications to flow and measures to address anthropogenic impacts must be found that will rectify this. Based on this assessment, we have ascertained that the REC for the Mhlali Estuary is a Category B.

The flow requirements for the estuary are the same as those described for Scenario 1 and are summarised below:

| %ile | Oct | Nov | Dec | Jan | Feb | Mar | Apr | Мау | Jun | Jul | Aug | Sep |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|-------|------|------|-------|
| 99.9 | 12.92 | 17.08 | 16.38 | 17.46 | 19.97 | 26.62 | 12.01 | 5.80 | 20.45 | 6.22 | 1.01 | 28.77 |
| 99 | 12.45 | 13.49 | 14.03 | 15.76 | 17.38 | 23.93 | 11.05 | 5.64 | 5.21 | 1.81 | 0.80 | 7.37 |
| 90 | 1.99 | 6.31 | 5.59 | 6.59 | 11.11 | 7.91 | 4.59 | 2.15 | 0.53 | 0.37 | 0.38 | 0.50 |
| 80 | 1.05 | 3.19 | 3.69 | 4.81 | 7.72 | 5.19 | 2.60 | 0.68 | 0.29 | 0.23 | 0.18 | 0.30 |
| 70 | 0.52 | 2.19 | 2.40 | 3.44 | 4.12 | 3.75 | 1.64 | 0.42 | 0.19 | 0.07 | 0.10 | 0.23 |
| 60 | 0.42 | 1.01 | 1.65 | 2.59 | 2.78 | 2.41 | 0.86 | 0.30 | 0.11 | 0.06 | 0.08 | 0.15 |
| 50 | 0.32 | 0.63 | 1.06 | 1.73 | 2.10 | 1.53 | 0.59 | 0.21 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 0.08 |
| 40 | 0.24 | 0.44 | 0.62 | 0.91 | 1.25 | 0.91 | 0.42 | 0.15 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.07 |
| 30 | 0.15 | 0.34 | 0.45 | 0.56 | 0.64 | 0.55 | 0.31 | 0.11 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.05 |
| 20 | 0.08 | 0.24 | 0.33 | 0.39 | 0.50 | 0.33 | 0.21 | 0.08 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.05 |
| 10 | 0.06 | 0.10 | 0.14 | 0.26 | 0.24 | 0.17 | 0.08 | 0.07 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.04 |
| 1 | 0.04 | 0.05 | 0.06 | 0.08 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.03 | 0.03 | 0.03 | 0.03 |
| 0.1 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.05 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.03 | 0.02 | 0.02 | 0.02 | 0.02 |

The following management interventions are required to attain a B Category:

- Reduce the nutrient input from the WWTW and catchment to control growth of reeds and aquatic invasive plants;
- Remove the sugarcane from the Estuary Functional Zone (below 5 m contour) to allow for a buffer against human disturbance and the development of a transitional vegetation ecotone between estuarine and terrestrial ecosystems;
- Removal of vegetation from main river channel in upper reaches, including invasive aliens plants and strands of eucalypts (using CoastCare programme);
- Ensure that the estuary is not artificial breached; and
- Remove the old saltwater weir from middle reaches of system.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

| DOCU | MENT INDEX1 | -1 |
|----------|---|------------|
| AUTHO | | ! |
| ACKN | | ! |
| REPU | (I SCHEDULE | ! |
| | | I vii |
| | E TABLES | ix |
| LIST O | F FIGURES | xii |
| ACRO | NYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS | kiii |
| 1 | INTRODUCTION | 1 |
| 1.1 | Ecological water requirement method for estuaries | 1 |
| 1.2 | Definition of confidence levels | 4 |
| 1.3 | Assumptions and limitations for this study | 4 |
| 1.4 | Structure of this report | 5 |
| 2 | BACKGROUND INFORMATION | 6 |
| 2.1 | Hydrological characteristics | 6 |
| 2.2 | Catchment characteristics and land-use | 0 |
| 2.3 3 | DELINEATION OF ESTUARY | 0 |
| 3.1 | Geographical boundaries | |
| 3.2 | Zonation of the Mhlali Estuary | 10 |
| 3.3 | Typical abiotic states | 10 |
| 4 | ECOLOGICAL BASELINE AND HEALTH ASSESSMENT | 12 |
| 4.1 | Hydrology | 12 |
| 4.1.1 | Baseline description | 12 |
| 1.1.1 | Low flows | 16 |
| 1.1.2 | Flood regime | 16 |
| 4.1.2 | Hydrological health | 16 |
| 4.2 | Physical habitat | 16 |
| 4.2.1 | Baseline description | 16 |
| 4.2.2 | Physical habitat health | 20 |
| 4.3 | Hydrodynamics | 21 |
| 4.3.1 | Baseline description | 21 |
| 4.3.2 | Hydrodynamic health | 21 |
| 4.4 | Water quality | 22 |
| 4.4.1 | Baseline description | 22 |
| 4.4.2 | Water quality health | 26 |
| 4.5 | Microalgae Overview | 27 |
| 4.5.1 | Microalgae health | 29 |
| 4.6 | Macrophytes | 30 |
| 4.6.1 | Overview | 30 |
| 4.6.2 | Macrophyte health | 33 |
| 4.7 | Invertebrates | 34 |
| 4.7.1 | Overview | 34 |
| 4.7.2 | Invertebrate health | 35 |
| 4.8 | Fish | 36 |
| 4.8.1 | Overview | 36 |
| 4.8.2 | Fish health | 40 |
| 4.9 | Birds | 41 |
| 4.9.1 | Overview | 41 |
| 5 | PRESENT ECOLOGICAL STATUS | 45 |
| 5.1 | Overall Estuarine Health Index Score | 45 |

| 5.2 | Relative contribution of flow and non-flow related impacts on health | 46 |
|---------|--|----|
| 5.3 | Overall confidence | 46 |
| 6 | THE RECOMMENDED ECOLOGICAL CATEGORY | 47 |
| 6.1 | Conservation Importance | 47 |
| 6.2 | Recommended Ecological Category | 48 |
| 7 | CONSEQUENCES OF ALTERNATIVE SCENARIOS | 50 |
| 7.1 | Description of Scenarios | 50 |
| 7.2 | Variability in river inflow | 50 |
| 7.3 | Abiotic components | 58 |
| 7.3.1 | Hydrology | 58 |
| 7.3.1.1 | Low flows | 58 |
| 7.3.1.2 | P Flood regime | 58 |
| 7.3.2 | Hydrodynamics and mouth condition | 58 |
| 7.3.3 | Water quality | 59 |
| 7.3.4 | Physical habitats | 61 |
| 7.4 | Biotic Component | 61 |
| 7.4.1 | Microalgae | 61 |
| 7.4.2 | Macrophytes | 62 |
| 7.4.3 | Invertebrates | 63 |
| 7.4.4 | Fish | 64 |
| 7.4.5 | Birds | 65 |
| 7.5 | Ecological Categories associated with scenarios | 65 |
| 8 | RECOMMENDATIONS | 67 |
| 8.1 | Ecological flow requirementS | 67 |
| 8.2 | Resource Quality Objectives | 67 |
| 8.3 | Monitoring requirements | 72 |
| 9 | REFERENCES | 78 |
| 10 | Appendix A: MACROPHYTES OF THE MHLALI ESTUARY | 80 |
| 10.1 | | 80 |
| 10.2 | MATERIALS AND METHODS | 81 |
| 10.3 | RESULIS AND DISCUSSION | 81 |
| 10.3.1 | Species composition and macrophyte habitats | 81 |
| 10.3.2 | Changes over time in the macrophyte habitats | 84 |
| 11 | Appendix B: Historic records of fishes sampled in Mhlali Estuary | 86 |

LIST OF TABLES

| Table 1.1 | Estuarine Health Index (EHI) scoring system1 |
|-----------------|--|
| Table 1.2 | Translation of EHI scores into ecological classes |
| Table 1.3 | Estuary Importance scoring system |
| Table 1.4 | Estuarine Importance rating system |
| Table 1.5 | Guidelines to assign REC based on protection status and importance and |
| PES of an es | stuary |
| Table 2.1 | Pressures related to flow modification |
| Table 2.2 | Pressures, other than modification of river inflow presently affecting estuary |
| Table 3.1 | Key features of the Mhlali Estuary zonation10 |
| Table 3.2 | Summary of the abiotic states that can occur in the Mhlali Estuary |
| Table 4.1 | A summary of the monthly flow (in m^3/s) distribution under the Present State 12 |
| Table 4.2 | A summary of the monthly flow (in m ³ /s) distribution under the Reference State 12 |
| Table 4.3 | Simulated monthly flows (in m ³ /s) to the Mhlali Estuary for the Present State 14 |
| Table 4.4 | Simulated monthly flows (in m ³ /s) to Mhlali Estuary for Reference Condition 15 |
| Table 4.5 | Summary of the change in low flow conditions to the Mhlali Estuary from the |
| Reference Co | ndition to the Present State |
| Table 4.7 | The hydrological health score16 |
| Table 4.8 Cald | culation of the physical habitat score and adjusted score (net of non-flow impacts).20 |
| Table 4.9 | Summary of the abiotic states, and associated hydrodynamic characteristics21 |
| Table 4.10 | Calculation of the hydrodynamics score21 |
| Table 4.10 | Summary of available water quality data on the Mhlali Estuary |
| Table 4.11 | Discharges from Shakaskraal and Tinley Manor WWTW22 |
| Table 4.10 | Calculation of the nutrient concentration under the various operational flow |
| scenarios | 23 |
| Table 4.13 | Summary of water quality characteristics of different abiotic states in the Mhlali |
| Estuary (differ | rences in state between reference condition and present state and future scenarios – |
| due to anthrop | pogenic influences other than flow - are indicated)24 |
| Table 4.14 | Summary of average changes in water quality from Reference Condition to Present |
| State within ea | ach of the various |
| Table 4.15 | Summary of changes and calculation of the water quality health score27 |
| Table 4.16 | Effect of abiotic characteristics and processes, as well as other biotic components |
| (variables) on | various groupings |
| Table 4.17 | Summary of Microalgae responses to different abiotic states |
| Table 4.18 | Summary of relative changes from Reference Condition to Present State |
| Table 4.19 | Microalgae component health score29 |
| Table 4.20 | Macrophyte habitats and functional groups recorded in the estuary with examples of |
| dominant spec | cies in italics |
| Table 4.21 | Effect of abiotic characteristics and processes, as well as other biotic components |
| (variables) on | macrophyte habitats |
| Table 4.22 | Summary of Macrophyte responses to different abiotic states |
| Table 4.23 | Comparison of area (ha) for the different macrophyte habitats at Mhlali Estuary |
| under natural, | earliest aerial imagery (1937) and present (2013) conditions |
| Table 4.23 | Summary of relative changes from the Reference Condition to Present state 33 |
| Table 4.24 | Macrophyte component health score |
| Table 4.27 | Summary of Invertebrate responses to different abiotic states |
| Table 4.28 | Summary of relative changes from Reference Condition to Present state |

| Table 4.29 | Invertebrate component health score | .36 |
|-------------------|---|------|
| Table 4.30 | Classification of South African fish fauna according to their dependence | on |
| estuaries (Wh | itfield 1994) | .36 |
| Table 4.31 | Effect of abiotic characteristics and processes, as well as other biotic compone | nts |
| (variables) on | various groupings | .37 |
| Table 4.32 | Summary of fish responses to different abiotic states | .38 |
| Table 4.33 | Summary of relative changes from Reference Condition to Present state | 40 |
| Table 4.34 | Fish component health score | .40 |
| Table 4.35 | Waterbird feeding guilds and their defining features and typical/dominant speci 41 | ies. |
| Table 4.36 | Effect of abiotic characteristics and processes, as well as other biotic compone | nts |
| (variables) on | various groupings (generalist gulls excluded from consideration due to their ove | rall |
| resilience, unp | predictability and adaptability) | .42 |
| Table 4.37 | Summary of bird responses to different abiotic states | 43 |
| Table 4.38 | Summary of relative changes from Reference Condition to Present state | 43 |
| Table 4.39 | Bird component health score | .44 |
| Table 5.1 | Estuarine Health Score (EHI) for the Mhlali Estuary | 45 |
| Table 6.1. | Estimation of the functional importance score of the Mhlali Estuary | 47 |
| Table 6.2 | Estuarine Importance scores for the Mhlali Estuary | .47 |
| Table 6.3. | Estuarine importance scores (EIS) and significance | .48 |
| Table 6.4. | Relationship between the EHI, PES and minimum REC | 48 |
| Table 7.1 Sun | nmary of flow scenarios | . 50 |
| Table 7.3 Sun | nmary of the monthly flow (in m^3/s) distribution under Scenario 1 and 5 | 50 |
| Table 7.4 Sun | nmary of the monthly flow (in m^3/s) distribution under Scenario 2 | 50 |
| Table 7.5 Sun | nmary of the monthly flow (in m^3/s) distribution under Scenario 3 | 51 |
| Table 7.5 Sun | nmary of the monthly flow (in m^3/s) distribution under Scenario 4 | 51 |
| Table 7.6 | Simulated monthly flows (in m^3/s) to the Mhlali Estuary for Scenario 1 and 5 | 54 |
| Table 7.7 | Simulated monthly flows (in m^3/s) to the Mhlali Estuary for Scenario 2 | 55 |
| Table 7.8 | Simulated monthly flows (in m^3/s) to the Mhlali Estuary for Scenario 3 | 56 |
| Table 7.8 | Simulated monthly flows (in m^3/s) to the Mhlali Estuary for Scenario 4 | .57 |
| Table 7.9 | Summary of the change in low flow conditions to the Mhlali Estuary under a range | ə of |
| flow scenarios 58 | | |
| Table 7.11 | EHI scores for hydrology under the different scenarios | .58 |
| Table 7.12 | EHI scores for hydrodynamics and mouth condition under different scenarios | 59 |
| Table 7.13 | Summary of the occurrence of the abiotic states under the Reference Conditi | on, |
| Present State | and Scenarios 1 to 5 | .59 |
| Table 7.14. | Estimated changes in water quality in different zones under different scenarios | 59 |
| Table 7.15. | Summary of water quality changes under different scenarios | 60 |
| Table 7.16 | EHI scores for water quality under different scenarios | 60 |
| Table 7.17 | Summary of physical habitat changes under different scenarios | 61 |
| Table 7.18 | EHI scores for physical habitat under different scenarios | 61 |
| Table 7.19 | Summary of change in microalgae component under different scenarios | 61 |
| Table 7.20 | EHI scores for microalgae component under different scenarios | 62 |
| Table 7.21 | Summary of change in macrophytes component under different scenarios | 62 |
| Table 7.22 | EHI scores for macrophyte component under different scenarios | 63 |
| Table 7.23 | Summary of change in invertebrates component under different scenarios | 63 |
| Table 7.24 | EHI scores for invertebrates component under different scenarios | 64 |
| Table 7.25 | Summary of change in fish component under different scenarios | 64 |
| Table 7.26 | EHI scores for fish component under different scenarios | 65 |
| | | |

| Table 7.27 | Summary of change in bird component under different scenarios |
|------------|---|
| Table 7.28 | EHI scores for bird component under different scenarios |
| Table 7.29 | EHI score and corresponding Ecological Categories under the different runoff |
| scenarios | 66 |
| Table 8.1 | The ecological flow requirements (in $m^3.s^{-1}$) of the Mhlali Estuary |
| Table 8.1 | Mhlali Ecological specifications and thresholds of potential concern for abiotic |
| components | 68 |
| Table 8.2 | Ecological specifications and thresholds of potential concern for biotic components |
| | 69 |
| Table 8.3 | Recommended baseline monitoring requirements |
| Table 8.3 | Recommended long-term monitoring requirements |

LIST OF FIGURES

| Figure 2.1. | Overview of land-use in the Mhlali catchment7 |
|---------------|---|
| Figure 3.1. | Geographical boundaries of the Mhlali Estuary based on the Estuary |
| Functional Z | one9 |
| Figure 3.2. | Zonation of the Mhlali Estuary |
| Figure 4.1 | Graphic presentation of the occurrence of the various abiotic states under the |
| Present State | 13 |
| Figure 4.2 | Graphic presentation of the occurrence of the various abiotic states under the |
| Reference Co | ndition |
| Figure 4.3 | Historical image of the Mhlali Estuary - 1937 17 |
| Figure 4.4 | Historical image of the Mhlali Estuary - August 1967 17 |
| Figure 4.5 | A historical image of the Mhlali Estuary - 1973 |
| Figure 4.7 | Satellite image of the Mhlali Estuary - 2 June 2006 (Source: Google Earth) |
| Figure 4.6 | Satellite image of the Mhlali Estuary - 9 April 2010 (Source: Google Earth) |
| Figure 4.8 | Satellite image of the Mhlali Estuary - 15 July 2014 (Source: Google Earth) 19 |
| Figure 4.9. | Tinley Manor WWTW (just downstream of N2 Bridge |
| Figure 4.9. | Distribution of macrophyte habitats at Mhlali Estuary in 2013 |
| Figure 7.1 | Graphic presentation of the occurrence of the various abiotic states under the |
| Scenario 1 an | d 552 |
| Figure 7.2 | Graphic presentation of the occurrence of the various abiotic states under Scenario |
| 2 | 52 |
| Figure 7.3 | Graphic presentation of the occurrence of the various abiotic states under Scenario |
| 3 | 53 |
| Figure 7.4 | Graphic presentation of the occurrence of the various abiotic states under Scenario |
| 4 | 53 |

ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

| BAS | Best Attainable State |
|----------|---|
| CD | Chief Directorate |
| CSIR | Centre of Scientific and Industrial Research |
| DEA: 0&C | Department of Environmental Affairs: Oceans and Coast |
| DIN | Dissolved Inorganic Nitrogen |
| DIP | Dissolved Inorganic Phosphate |
| DO | Dissolved Oxygen |
| DRP | Dissolved Reactive Phosphate |
| DRS | Dissolved Reactive Silicate |
| DWA | Department of Water Affairs |
| DWAF | Department of Water Affairs and Forestry |
| EHI | Estuarine Health Index |
| EIS | Estuarine Importance Score |
| ERC | Ecological Reserve Category |
| EWR | Ecological Water Requirement |
| Н | High |
| L | Low |
| Μ | Medium |
| MAR | Mean Annual Runoff |
| MCM | Million Cubic Metres |
| MCM/a | Million Cubic Metres per annum |
| MSL | Mean Sea Level |
| NMMU | Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University |
| NWA | National Water Act (1998) |
| PES | Present Ecological Status |
| ppt | Parts per thousand |
| RDM | Resource Directed Measures |
| REI | River Estuary Interface |
| RQO | Resource Quality Objectives |
| SA | South Africa |
| SDF | Standard Design Flood |
| VL | Very low |
| WMA | Water Management Area |

1 INTRODUCTION

1.1 ECOLOGICAL WATER REQUIREMENT METHOD FOR ESTUARIES

Methods to determine the environmental flow requirement of estuaries were established soon after the promulgation of the NWA in 1998. The so-called "Preliminary Reserve Method" involves setting a Recommended Ecological Category (i.e. desired state), recommended Ecological Reserve (i.e. flow allocation to achieve the desired state) and recommended Resource Quality Objectives for a resource on the basis of its present health status and its ecological importance. The method follows a generic methodology which can be carried out at different levels of effort (e.g. rapid, intermediate or comprehensive). The official method for estuaries (Version 2) is documented in DWA (2008). In 2013, a Version 3 of the method was published as part of a Water Research Commission study (Turpie et al. 2012). As this study was initiated in 2012 Version 2 is still applied in this study (DWA 2008), but with consideration of obvious improvements proposed in Version 3 for the evaluation of abiotic processes such as water quality (Turpie et al. 2012). Currently, the official suite of "Preliminary Reserve Methods" for estuaries does not include a desktop assessment method. However, a desktop approach for assessing estuary health in data poor environments was recently applied successfully in South Africa's 2012 National Biodiversity Assessment (Van Niekerk and Turpie 2012). This method has since been refined in a Water Research Commission study (Van Niekerk et al. 2014) and was also applied in this Mkomazi to Umzimkulu WMA study, where considered appropriate.

This report presented the EcoClassification of the Mhlali Estuary on a Rapid level.

The generic steps of the official "Ecological Reserve Method" for estuaries were applied as follows:

- Step 1: Initiate study defining the study area, project team and level of study (confirmed in the **inception report** of this study)
- Step 2: Delineate the geographical boundaries of the resource units (confirmed in the delineation report of this study)
- Step 3a: Determine the **Present Ecological Status** (PES) or resource health (water quantity, water quality, habitat and biota) assessed in terms of the degree of similarity to the reference condition (referring to natural, unimpacted characteristics of a water resource, and must represent a stable baseline based on expert judgement in conjunction with local knowledge and historical data). An Estuarine Health Index (EHI) is used to evaluate the current condition of the estuary (Table 1.1).

| Variable | Score | Weight | Weighted Score |
|-----------------------------------|-------|--------|-------------------|
| Hydrology | | 25 | |
| Hydrodynamics and mouth condition | | 25 | |
| Water quality | | 25 | |
| Physical habitat alteration | | 25 | |
| Habitat health score | | | |

 Table 1.1
 Estuarine Health Index (EHI) scoring system

| Variable | Score | Weight | Weighted Score |
|---|-------|--------|-------------------|
| Microalgae | | 20 | |
| Macrophytes | | 20 | |
| Invertebrates | | 20 | |
| Fish | | 20 | |
| Birds | | 20 | |
| Biotic health score | | | |
| Estuary Health Score Mean (Habitat health, Biological health) | | | |

In the case of this assessment the EHI scoring of the various variables is based on a review of historical data, as well as data collected during a field monitoring programme in 2013 (refer to Appendices for specialist reports).

The estuarine health score is translated into one of six ecological classes provide below in Table 1.2.

| EHI Score | PES | General Description | | | |
|--------------|-----|--|--|--|--|
| 91 – 100 | A | Unmodified, or approximates natural condition; the natural abiotic template should not be modified. The characteristics of the resource should be determined by unmodifed natural disturbance regimes. There should be no human induced risks to the abiotic and biotic maintenance of the resource. The supply capacity of the resource will not be used | | | |
| 76 – 90 | В | Largely natural with few modifications. A small change in natural habitats and biota may have taken place, but the ecosystem functions are essentially unchanged. Only a small risk of modifyng the natural abiotic template and exceeding the resource base should not be allowed. Although the risk to the well- being and survival of especially intolerant biota (depending on the nature of the disturbance) at a very limited number of localities may be slightly higher than expected under natural conditions, the resilience and adaptability of biota must not be compromised. The impact of acute disturbances must be totally mitigated by the presence of sufficient refuge areas. | | | |
| 61 – 75 | С | Moderately modified. A loss and change of natural habitat and biota have occurred, but the basic ecosystem functions are still predominantly unchanged. A moderate risk of modifying the abiotic template and exceeding the resource base may be allowed. Risks to the wellbeing and survival of intolerant biota (depending on the nature of the disturbance) may generally be increased with some reduction of resilience and adaptability at a small number of localities. However, the impact of local and acute disturbances must at least partly be mitigated by the presence of sufficient refuge areas. | | | |
| 41 – 60 | D | Largely modified. A large loss of natural habitat, biota and basic ecosystem functions has occurred. Large risk of modifying the abiotic template and exceeding the resource base may be allowed. Risk to the well-being and survival of intolerant biota depending on (the nature of the disturbance) may be allowed to generally increase substantially with resulting low abundances and frequency of occurrence, and a reduction of resilience and adaptability at a large number of localities. However, the associated increase in the abundance of tolerant species must not be allowed to assume pest proportions. The impact of local and acute disturbances must at least to some extent be mitigated by refuge areas. | | | |
| 21 – 40 | Е | Seriously modified. The loss of natural habitat, biota and basic ecosystem functions is extensive | | | |
| 0-20 | F | Critically modified. Modifications have reached a critical level and the lotic system has been modified completely with an almost complete loss of natural habitat and biota. In the worst instances the basic ecosystem functions have been destroyed and the changes are irreversible | | | |

Table 1.2 Translation of EHI scores into ecological classes

Step 3b: Determine the Estuary Importance Score (EIS) that takes account the size, the rarity of the estuary type within its biographical zone, habitat, biodiversity and functional importance of the estuary into account (Table 1.3 and Table 1.4).

| | scoring system | • | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|--------|----------------|
| Criterion | Score | Weight | Weighted Score |
| Estuary Size | | 15 | |
| Zonal Rarity Type | | 10 | |
| Habitat Diversity | | 25 | |
| Biodiversity Importance | | 25 | |
| Functional Importance | | 25 | |
| Weighted Estuary Importance Score | | | |

Table 1.3 Estuary Importance scoring system

Table 1.4 Estuarine Importance rating system

| EIS | Importance rating |
|----------|------------------------------|
| 81 – 100 | Highly important |
| 61 – 80 | Important |
| 0 - 60 | Of low to average importance |

Step 3c: Set the **Recommended Ecological Category (REC)** which is derived from the PES and EIS (or the protection status allocated to a specific estuary) flowing the guidelines listed in Table 1.5.

 Table 1.5
 Guidelines to assign REC based on protection status and importance and PES of an estuary

| Protection Status and Importance | REC | Policy basis | | | | |
|--|----------------|---|--|--|--|--|
| Protected area | A or DAC* | Protected and desired protected areas | | | | |
| Desired Protected Area (based on complementarity) | A UI DAS | best possible state of health | | | | |
| Highly important | PES + 1, min B | Highly important estuaries should be in an A or B category | | | | |
| Important | PES + 1, min C | Important estuaries should be in an A, B or C category | | | | |
| Of low to average importance | PES, min D | The remaining estuaries can be allowed to remain in a D category | | | | |

* BAS = Best Attainable State

An estuary cannot be allocated an REC below a category "D". Therefore systems with a PES in categories 'E' or 'F' needs to be managed towards achieving at least a REC of "D".

Step 4: Quantify of the ecological consequences of various runoff scenarios (including proposed operational scenarios) where the predicted future condition of the estuary is assessed under each scenario. As with the determination of the PES, the EHI is used to assess the predicted condition in terms of the degree of similarity to the reference condition.

- Step 5: Quantify the (recommended) **Ecological Water Requirements** which represent the lowest flow scenario that will maintain the resource in the REC.
- Step 6: Estimate (recommended) Resource Quality Objectives (Ecological Specification) for the recommended REC, as well as future monitoring requirements to improve the confidence of the EWR.

1.2 DEFINITION OF CONFIDENCE LEVELS

The level of available historical data in combination with the level of effort expended during the assessment determines the level of confidence of the study. Three levels of study have been recognised in the past in terms of the effort expended during the assessment – rapid, intermediate and comprehensive. In this study, effort lay somewhere between intermediate and comprehensive study, in that some field data collection was carried out, but the long-term river inflow data needed to bench mark the abiotic processes were not available. Nevertheless, as a result of the availability of historical data and the relative uncomplicated nature of the estuarine processes meant that we expected the confidence of the study to be low. This is a situation that can only be remedied with some comprehensive and long term data collection on the system. Criteria for the confidence limits attached to statements in this study are:

| Confidence level | Situation | Expressed as percentage |
|------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| Low | Limited data available | <40% certainty |
| Medium | Reasonable data available | 40 – 80% certainty |
| High | Good data available | > 80% certainty |

1.3 ASSUMPTIONS AND LIMITATIONS FOR THIS STUDY

The following assumptions and limitations should be taken into account:

 The accuracy and confidence of an Estuarine Ecological Water Requirements study is strongly dependant on the quality of the hydrology. The overall confidence in the hydrology supplied to the estuarine study team are of a low level (<60), with a particular concern regarding the accuracy of the river inflow that drives the abiotic states of the estuary.

1.4 STRUCTURE OF THIS REPORT

The report is structured as follows:

- Chapter 1 Provides an overview of EWR methods and confidence of the study.
- Chapter 2 Summarises important background information related to the hydrological characteristics, catchment characteristics and land-use, as well as human pressures affecting the estuary
- Chapter 3 Defines the geographical boundaries of the study area, as well as the zoning and typical abiotic states adopted for this estuary;
- Chapter 4 Provides a baseline ecological and health assessment of the estuary. It describes each of the abiotic and biotic aspects of the estuary from hydrology to birds describing understanding of the present situation and estimation of the reference condition. The health state of each component is computed using the Estuary Health Index (EHI).
- Chapter 5 Describes the overall state of health (or present ecological status) of the estuary. It also summarises the overall confidence of the study and the degree to which non-flow factors have contributed to the degradation of the system.
- Chapter 6 Combines the EHI score with the Estuarine Importance Score (EIS) for the system to determine the Recommended Ecological Category.
- Chapter 7 Describes the ecological consequences of various future flow scenarios, and determines the Ecological Category for each of these using the EHI.
- Chapter 8 Concludes with recommendations on the ecological water requirements for the estuary, as well as recommended resource quality objectives (ecological specifications). Finally, monitoring requirements to improve the confidence of the EWR assessment are recommended.

2 BACKGROUND INFORMATION

2.1 HYDROLOGICAL CHARACTERISTICS

The Mhlali catchment has been estimated at 256 km², 295 km² and 331 km² in Begg (1978). Begg (1978) estimates the river length to be between 38 km and 55 km. According to Begg (1978) annual run-off varies between 49.85 x 10^6 m³ to 59.76 10^6 m³.

This study estimates the a MAR of $56.31 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$ and $51.92 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$, for the Reference Condition and Present State respectively.

2.2 CATCHMENT CHARACTERISTICS AND LAND-USE

1.4.1 Land-use

The land in the area surrounding the estuary is used predominantly for growing sugar cane (Begg 1978). A holiday resort has been developed on the north bank adjacent to the mouth. The south bank has been largely untouched. The central island and floodplain areas are planted with sugar cane.

To provide a broad over view of the land-use in the Mhlali Catchment (Figure 2.1) indicate that:

- About 51% of the catchment is cultivated, permanent, commercial sugarcane;
- About 28% of the catchment is thicket / bushland, with an additional 4% degraded thicket / bushland;
- About 9% of the catchment is natural grasslands, with about 3% classified as degraded grassland;
- Cultivated temporarily subsistence dryland were estimated at 2%;
- Forest Plantations: Eucalyptus spp <1%, Pine spp <1, Aciacia spp <1
- Formally urban built up areas are estimated at <1%.



Figure 2.1. Overview of land-use in the Mhlali catchment

2.3 HUMAN ACTIVITIES AFFECTING THE ESTUARY (PRESSURES)

Table 2.1 and 2.2 provide a summary of the flow and non-flow related pressures contributing to the Present State of the Mhlali Estuary.

| Table 2.1 | Pressures | related to | flow | modification |
|-----------|-----------|------------|------|--------------|
|-----------|-----------|------------|------|--------------|

| Activity | Present | Description of Impact |
|--|---------|-----------------------|
| Water abstraction and dams (including farm dams) | ~ | |
| Augmentation/Inter-basin transfer schemes | | |
| Infestation by invasive alien plants | | |

Table 2.2 Pressures, other than modification of river inflow presently affecting estuary

| Activity | Present | Description of Impact |
|---|--------------|--|
| Agricultural and pastoral run-off containing fertilisers, pesticides and herbicides | ~ | Extensive sugar cane in the floodplain areas. |
| Shakaskraal WWTW (approx. 3.5 km upstream of estuary) (currently 0.8 with a a license agreement to 1.28Ml/day) | ~ | Municipal wastewater, potentially high nutrients and organic matter |
| <i>Tinley Manor WWTW (discharging in Zone C)</i> (6. <i>Ml/day from next year, with a license agreement</i> to 18 <i>Ml/d</i>) | ~ | Municipal wastewater, potentially high nutrients and organic matter |
| Bridge(s) | \checkmark | The N2 national road crosses the river in Zone C about 3.6 km from the mouth (Figure 1). |
| Artificial breaching | \checkmark | Yes, but breaching level unknown. |
| Bank stabilisation and destabilisation | | |
| Low-lying developments | ✓ | Sugar cane fields |
| Migration barrier in river | ✓ | Salt barrage |
| Recreational fishing | ✓ | Limited. Mostly targets the beach |
| Subsistence fishing (e.g. gillnet fishery) | | |
| Illegal fishing (Poaching) | | |
| Bait collection | | |
| Development in the Estuary Functional Zone (EFZ) | ~ | Extensive sugar cane cultivation of surrounding land |
| Translocated or alien fauna and flora | | |
| Recreational disturbance of waterbirds | \checkmark | Limited activities near the mouth |

3 DELINEATION OF ESTUARY

3.1 GEOGRAPHICAL BOUNDARIES

The mouth of the Mhlali River is approximately 68 km north of Durban (Figure 1). The Mhlali Estuary is classified as a "Temporarily open/closed" type estuary as it mouth closes from time to time depending on river inflow (Whitfield 1992).

For the purposes of this EWR study, the geographical boundaries of the estuary are defined as follows (Figure 3.1):

| Downstream boundary: | Estuary mouth 29°27'41.37"S, 31°16'37.04"E |
|----------------------|--|
| Upstream boundary: | 29°26'40.83"S, 31°14'58.85"E |
| Lateral boundaries: | 5 m contour above Mean Sea Level (MSL) along each bank |



Figure 3.1. Geographical boundaries of the Mhlali Estuary based on the Estuary Functional Zone

3.2 ZONATION OF THE MHLALI ESTUARY

For the purposes of this study, the Mhlali Estuary is sub-divided into three distinct zones, primarily based on bathymetry (Figure 3.2):



Figure 3.2. Zonation of the Mhlali Estuary

Table 3.1 below list some of the key features of the Mhlali Estuary zonation that is used to determine the weighting of scores.

Table 3.1Key features of the Mhlali Estuary zonation

| | Zone A (lower) | Zone B (middle) | Zone C (upper) |
|------------------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Area (ha) | 5.2 | 2.2 | 2.9 |
| Approximate % area | 50% | 20% | 30% |
| Maximum depth (to MSL) | -0.5 | -0.25 to 0.5 | -1.0 in pools |

3.3 TYPICAL ABIOTIC STATES

Based on available literature, a number of characteristic 'states' can be identified for the Mhlali Estuary, related to mouth condition, tidal exchange, salinity distribution and water quality. These are primarily determined by river inflow patterns, water levels and duration since last breaching. The different states are listed in Table 3.2.

| Table 3.2 Summary of the abiotic states that can occur in the Mhlali Est |
|--|
|--|

| State | Flow range (m ³ /s) | Description |
|---------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| State 1 | <0.5 | Closed, weeks to months |
| State 2 | 0.5 - 3 | Open, limited marine |
| State 3 | >3 | Open, fresh |

The transition between the different states will not be instantaneous, but will take place gradually.

To assess the occurrence and duration of the different abiotic states selected for the estuary during the different scenarios, a number of techniques were used:

- Colour coding (indicated above) are used to visually highlight the occurrence of the various abiotic states between different scenarios.
- Summary tables of the occurrence of different flows at increments of the 10% ile are listed separately to provide a quick comprehensive overview; and

A summary of the typical physical and water quality characteristics of different abiotic states in the Mhlali Estuary is provided Chapter 4.

4 ECOLOGICAL BASELINE AND HEALTH ASSESSMENT

4.1 HYDROLOGY

4.1.1 Baseline description

According to the hydrological data provided for this study, the present day MAR into the Mhlali Estuary is 51.55 Million m³. This is a decrease of 8% compared to the natural MAR of 56.31 Million m³. The occurrences of flow distributions (mean monthly flows in m³/s) for the Present State and Reference Condition of the Mhlali Estuary, derived from the 85-year simulated data set, are provided in Table 4.1 and Table 4.2. A graphic representation of the occurrence of the various abiotic states is presented in Figure 4.1 and Figure 4.2. The full 85-year series of simulated monthly runoff data for the Present State and Reference Condition is provided in Tables 4.3 and 4.4.

| %ile | Oct | Nov | Dec | Jan | Feb | Mar | Apr | Мау | Jun | Jul | Aug | Sep |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|-------|------|------|-------|
| 99.9 | 12.93 | 17.09 | 16.39 | 17.47 | 19.98 | 26.63 | 12.02 | 5.81 | 20.45 | 6.22 | 1.01 | 28.78 |
| 99 | 12.46 | 13.50 | 14.04 | 15.77 | 17.39 | 23.94 | 11.06 | 5.64 | 5.22 | 1.81 | 0.81 | 7.37 |
| 90 | 2.00 | 6.32 | 5.60 | 6.60 | 11.12 | 7.92 | 4.60 | 2.15 | 0.54 | 0.38 | 0.38 | 0.50 |
| 80 | 1.06 | 3.20 | 3.69 | 4.82 | 7.72 | 5.20 | 2.61 | 0.68 | 0.30 | 0.24 | 0.19 | 0.31 |
| 70 | 0.52 | 2.20 | 2.40 | 3.45 | 4.12 | 3.76 | 1.65 | 0.43 | 0.20 | 0.08 | 0.11 | 0.24 |
| 60 | 0.42 | 1.01 | 1.66 | 2.60 | 2.78 | 2.41 | 0.86 | 0.30 | 0.11 | 0.07 | 0.08 | 0.16 |
| 50 | 0.32 | 0.63 | 1.07 | 1.74 | 2.11 | 1.53 | 0.60 | 0.22 | 0.08 | 0.07 | 0.07 | 0.09 |
| 40 | 0.24 | 0.44 | 0.63 | 0.92 | 1.26 | 0.92 | 0.43 | 0.16 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 0.08 |
| 30 | 0.15 | 0.35 | 0.46 | 0.56 | 0.65 | 0.55 | 0.32 | 0.12 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.06 |
| 20 | 0.09 | 0.25 | 0.34 | 0.40 | 0.51 | 0.34 | 0.22 | 0.09 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.05 |
| 10 | 0.07 | 0.11 | 0.15 | 0.26 | 0.25 | 0.18 | 0.09 | 0.08 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.05 |
| 1 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.07 | 0.09 | 0.08 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.03 | 0.04 | 0.04 |
| 0.1 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.06 | 0.07 | 0.07 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.03 | 0.02 | 0.02 | 0.03 |

 Table 4.1
 A summary of the monthly flow (in m³/s) distribution under the Present State

| Table 4.2 | A summary of the monthly flow (in m ³ /s) distribution under the Reference |
|-----------|---|
| | State |

| %ile | Oct | Nov | Dec | Jan | Feb | Mar | Apr | May | Jun | Jul | Aug | Sep |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|-------|------|------|-------|
| 99.9 | 12.96 | 17.13 | 16.44 | 17.53 | 20.01 | 26.65 | 12.04 | 5.83 | 20.54 | 6.46 | 1.05 | 28.87 |
| 99 | 12.58 | 13.54 | 14.09 | 15.82 | 17.42 | 23.96 | 11.09 | 5.66 | 5.46 | 1.88 | 0.92 | 7.41 |
| 90 | 2.06 | 6.35 | 5.71 | 6.64 | 11.15 | 7.93 | 4.74 | 2.40 | 0.63 | 0.48 | 0.49 | 0.66 |
| 80 | 1.14 | 3.30 | 3.87 | 5.07 | 7.75 | 5.41 | 2.79 | 0.80 | 0.47 | 0.37 | 0.27 | 0.41 |
| 70 | 0.68 | 2.28 | 2.66 | 3.55 | 4.23 | 3.90 | 1.92 | 0.59 | 0.33 | 0.23 | 0.25 | 0.36 |
| 60 | 0.54 | 1.16 | 1.90 | 2.90 | 3.02 | 2.80 | 1.01 | 0.49 | 0.27 | 0.19 | 0.20 | 0.29 |
| 50 | 0.46 | 0.79 | 1.38 | 2.03 | 2.36 | 1.75 | 0.81 | 0.41 | 0.23 | 0.16 | 0.17 | 0.24 |
| 40 | 0.36 | 0.68 | 0.92 | 1.22 | 1.65 | 1.20 | 0.64 | 0.36 | 0.21 | 0.14 | 0.15 | 0.21 |
| 30 | 0.31 | 0.58 | 0.74 | 0.84 | 0.95 | 0.84 | 0.53 | 0.31 | 0.17 | 0.13 | 0.12 | 0.18 |
| 20 | 0.24 | 0.42 | 0.57 | 0.68 | 0.77 | 0.61 | 0.46 | 0.25 | 0.14 | 0.12 | 0.11 | 0.14 |
| 10 | 0.19 | 0.31 | 0.43 | 0.54 | 0.59 | 0.44 | 0.31 | 0.19 | 0.12 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.11 |
| 1 | 0.13 | 0.14 | 0.21 | 0.31 | 0.22 | 0.20 | 0.14 | 0.10 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.06 | 0.08 |
| 0.1 | 0.11 | 0.13 | 0.17 | 0.19 | 0.18 | 0.12 | 0.09 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.03 | 0.03 | 0.04 |



Figure 4.1 Graphic presentation of the occurrence of the various abiotic states under the Present State



Figure 4.2 Graphic presentation of the occurrence of the various abiotic states under the Reference Condition

CSIR October 2014

| Year | Oct | Nov | Dec | Jan | Feb | Mar | Apr | Mav | Jun | Jul | Aua | Sep |
|-------------|---------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|-------|------|------|-------|
| 1920 | 0.71 | 0.68 | 1.82 | 0.94 | 1.64 | 0.80 | 0.39 | 0.15 | 0.06 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.05 |
| 1921 | <u>0.52</u> 5.71 | 6.05 | 12.97 | 2.49 | 0.30 | 0.30 | 0.21 | 0.38 | 0.32 | 0.08 | 0.16 | 0.08 |
| 1922 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.18 | 1.03 | 1.53 | 0.55 | 0.42 | 0.09 | 0.00 | 0.03 | 0.03 | 0.03 |
| 1924 | 0.22 | 0.64 | 1.70 | 2.74 | 1.72 | 26.93 | 9.35 | 0.30 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 0.24 |
| 1925 | 0.50 | 0.35 | 0.22 | 0.11 | 0.20 | 0.55 | 0.25 | 0.08 | 0.08 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.05 |
| 1926 | 0.28 | 0.39 | 0.28 | 0.22 | 2.70 | 16.66 | 5.45 | 0.10 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.06 | 0.06 |
| 1927 | 0.07 | 0.08 | 0.32 | 2.29 | 1.45 | 0.53 | 0.27 | 0.08 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.05 |
| 1928 | 0.07 | 0.25 | 0.41 | 0.64 | 0.63 | 8.07 | 2.89 | 0.14 | 0.49 | 0.88 | 0.44 | 1.47 |
| 1929 | 4.32 | 2.10 | 0.45 | 1.17 | 0.55 | 0.45 | 0.39 | 0.14 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.20 | 0.45 |
| 1930 | 0.47 | 0.49 | 0.30 | 0.51 | 1.23 | 7.22 | 1.51 | 0.00 | 0.05 | 0.17 | 0.09 | 0.07 |
| 1937 | 0.07 | 0.34 | 0.52 | 0.31 | 023 | 0.17 | 0.14 | 0.45 | 0.06 | 0.00 | 0.05 | 0.05 |
| 1933 | 0.05 | 0.41 | 3.17 | 6.04 | 2.33 | 2.04 | 3.12 | 1.37 | 0.32 | 0.32 | 0.33 | 0.12 |
| 1934 | 0.09 | 0.08 | 0.44 | 3.27 | 4.13 | 2.18 | 0.66 | 5.82 | 22.15 | 6.71 | 0.43 | 0.19 |
| 1935 | 0.10 | 0.09 | 0.10 | 0.41 | 7.67 | 6.17 | 1.50 | 3.85 | 1.52 | 0.10 | 0.07 | 0.06 |
| 1936 | 0.17 | 11.35 | 3.67 | 0.26 | 2.29 | 0.84 | 0.56 | 0.16 | 0.15 | 0.07 | 0.10 | 0.08 |
| 1937 | 0.08 | 0.15 | 6.50 | 3.12 | 8.58 | 2.36 | 0.51 | 0.22 | 0.28 | 0.46 | 0.25 | 0.08 |
| 1938 | 0.38 | 1.70 | 3.50 | 0.92 | 0.17 | 0.14 | 0.16 | 3.01 | 1.72 | 0.20 | 0.09 | 0.52 |
| 1939 | 0.15 | 6.03 | 4 04 | 0.91 | 0.15 | 0.31 | 0.84 | 0.32 | 0.07 | 0.04 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| 1941 | 0.12 | 0.32 | 0.13 | 2.55 | 1.29 | 4.82 | 1.86 | 0.43 | 0.20 | 0.07 | 0.16 | 0.28 |
| 1942 | 0.66 | 7.04 | 11.97 | 3.56 | 3.91 | 5.07 | 7.72 | 2.64 | 0.44 | 0.59 | 1.04 | 0.54 |
| 1943 | 5.88 | 6.94 | 1.93 | 0.27 | 0.68 | 4.78 | 1.91 | 0.16 | 0.17 | 0.07 | 0.07 | 0.48 |
| 1944 | 1.15 | 0.88 | 0.29 | 0.21 | 3.30 | 12.13 | 3.91 | 0.28 | 0.08 | 0.07 | 0.05 | 0.05 |
| 1945 | 0.06 | 0.07 | 0.07 | 0.37 | 0.55 | 1.56 | 1.51 | 0.49 | 0.08 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.05 |
| 1946 | 0.06 | 2.60 | 0.60 | 1.74 | 11.28 | 3.07 | 1.55 | 0.53 | 0.40 | 0.17 | 0.10 | 0.09 |
| 1948 | 0.10 | 1.80 | 0.91 | 0.52 | 3.64 | 1 2 9 | 0.76 | 0.33 | 0.07 | 0.00 | 0.05 | 0.05 |
| 1949 | 0.42 | 4.92 | 7.22 | 2.53 | 0.71 | 0.62 | 0.32 | 0.26 | 0.08 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 0.06 |
| 1950 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.87 | 0.82 | 0.54 | 3.00 | 1.22 | 0.12 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 0.30 | 0.63 |
| 1951 | 0.68 | 0.35 | 2.70 | 6.19 | 2.11 | 0.37 | 0.73 | 0.70 | 0.30 | 0.09 | 0.07 | 0.07 |
| 1952 | 0.07 | 0.19 | 0.90 | 17.66 | 13.84 | 2.40 | 0.22 | 0.08 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.15 |
| 1953 | 0.27 | 0.59 | 3.86 | 1.70 | 2.64 | 1.24 | 0.40 | 0.22 | 0.08 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.37 |
| 1954 | 12.98 | 0.05 | 0.87 | 0.01 | 2.38 | 4.44 | 2.07 | 0.38 | 0.12 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.14 |
| 1955 | 0.32 | 0.90 | 13 55 | 4 78 | 2.84 | 2.01 | 9.88 | 3.11 | 0.07 | 0.07 | 0.11 | 0.29 |
| 1957 | 1.75 | 3.05 | 1.65 | 9.92 | 13.85 | 3.52 | 6.37 | 2.16 | 0.11 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.27 |
| 1958 | 0.22 | 1.01 | 1.66 | 0.86 | 0.64 | 0.18 | 0.09 | 0.47 | 0.25 | 0.07 | 0.12 | 0.18 |
| 1959 | 0.56 | 0.63 | 0.49 | 0.33 | 0.51 | 1.23 | 0.91 | 0.30 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.05 |
| 1960 | 0.15 | 2.26 | 6.79 | 4.26 | 1.18 | 0.59 | 10.86 | 3.60 | 0.55 | 0.24 | 0.09 | 0.24 |
| 1961 | 0.42 | 0.58 | 0.34 | 0.46 | 0.51 | 1.00 | 0.57 | 0.15 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.08 | 0.07 |
| 1962 | 0.11 | 6.50 | 2.30 | 6.88 | 2.75 | 4.21 | 1.73 | 0.16 | 0.25 | 0.46 | 0.22 | 0.08 |
| 1963 | 0.19 | 0.25 | 0.29 | 9.39 | 0.34 | 0.32 | 0.06 | 0.09 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.05 | 0.05 |
| 1965 | 0.46 | 0.69 | 0.66 | 2 26 | 1.09 | 0.10 | 0.08 | 0.00 | 0.13 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.06 |
| 1966 | 0.08 | 0.41 | 0.56 | 5.51 | 4.58 | 6.69 | 2.59 | 0.34 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.05 |
| 1967 | 0.15 | 1.99 | 0.76 | 5.81 | 2.43 | 0.60 | 0.35 | 0.09 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.16 | 0.25 |
| 1968 | 0.31 | 0.37 | 0.41 | 0.30 | 0.53 | 9.35 | 3.50 | 0.81 | 0.39 | 0.08 | 0.07 | 0.08 |
| <u>1969</u> | 2.31 | 3.80 | 2.43 | 0.97 | 0.35 | 0.10 | 0.07 | 0.18 | 0.14 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.30 |
| 1970 | 1.06 | 0.92 | 3.00 | 2.67 | 5.05 | 7.33 | 2.44 | 5.61 | 2.00 | 0.39 | 0.63 | 0.66 |
| 1971 | 0.41 | 0.30 | 0.37 | 0.84 | 1.00 | 0.74 | 0.44 | 0.00 | 0.02 | 0.24 | 0.09 | 2.15 |
| 1973 | 1.74 | 2.96 | 1.20 | 3.43 | 9.01 | 2.80 | 0.60 | 0.49 | 0.19 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.05 |
| 1974 | 0.06 | 0.14 | 1.07 | 8.90 | 7.52 | 1.44 | 0.28 | 0.12 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.38 |
| 1975 | 0.50 | 0.54 | 3.48 | 7.89 | 7.94 | 19.96 | 12.12 | 2.15 | 0.11 | 0.10 | 0.13 | 0.16 |
| 1976 | 1.24 | 1.03 | 0.63 | 4.35 | 14.50 | 5.00 | 0.61 | 0.10 | 0.07 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.30 |
| 1977 | 0.52 | 0.73 | 0.59 | 5.61 | 2.72 | 3.79 | 1.80 | 0.31 | 0.07 | 0.07 | 0.07 | 0.15 |
| 1978 | 2.16 | 0.12 | 2.73 | 0.67 | 0.61 | 0.36 | 0.16 | 0.08 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 0.12 |
| 1979 | 1.23 | 2.10 | 1.09 | 4 98 | 4 38 | 0.09 | 0.07 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 2.04 |
| 1981 | 1.06 | 4,08 | 1.34 | 2.34 | 1,14 | 0.68 | 0.56 | 0.20 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.05 |
| 1982 | 0.30 | 0.44 | 0.40 | 0.40 | 0.27 | 0.19 | 0.09 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.11 | 0.07 |
| 1983 | 0.26 | 5.57 | 5.44 | 15.40 | 16.84 | 7.50 | 5.06 | 1.57 | 0.25 | 0.53 | 0.56 | 0.26 |
| 1984 | 0.43 | 0.45 | 0.21 | 3.45 | 20.26 | 5.72 | 0.10 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.05 |
| 1985 | 4.73 | 2.20 | 1.19 | 4.44 | 1.84 | 1.62 | 0.93 | 0.16 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 0.06 |
| 1986 | 12.26 | 0.24 | 1.75 | 4.03 | 1.81 | 4.33 | 1.67 | 0.59 | 0.74 | 0.27 | 0.35 | 31.15 |
| 1987 | 0.33 | 4.51 | 4 36 | 1.64 | 10.11 | 23.37 | 0.39 | 0.19 | 0.07 | 0.20 | 0.06 | 0.16 |
| 1989 | 0.33 | 12.74 | 4 4 1 | 0.59 | 0.67 | 7 70 | 2.92 | 0.22 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.13 | 0.00 |
| 1990 | 0.44 | 0.47 | 3.77 | 2.24 | 8.83 | 9.45 | 2.40 | 0.23 | 0.13 | 0.08 | 0.07 | 0.32 |
| 1991 | 0.99 | 2.94 | 0.95 | 0.37 | 0.23 | 0.10 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.05 |
| 1992 | 0.06 | 0.15 | 0.10 | 0.10 | 0.24 | 0.23 | 0.23 | 0.08 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.05 | 0.15 |
| 1993 | 1.76 | 1.04 | 6.82 | 3.25 | 0.54 | 1.53 | 0.60 | 0.09 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.09 | 0.07 |
| 1994 | 0.38 | 0.29 | 0.12 | 0.10 | 0.08 | 0.34 | 3.24 | 1.61 | 0.84 | 0.32 | 0.08 | 0.06 |
| 1995 | 0.22 | 0.30 | 10.00 | 13.02 | 9.50 | 2.43 | 0.40 | 0.11 | 0.07 | 0.54 | 0.41 | 0.17 |
| 1990 | 1 44 | 10.20 | 3.57 | 0.20 | 4.08 | 1.38 | 0.32 | 0.30 | 0.30 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.10 |
| 1998 | 0.07 | 0.17 | 0.36 | 0.56 | 10.55 | 3.26 | 0.22 | 0.08 | 0.14 | 0.07 | 0.20 | 0.32 |
| 1999 | 7.04 | 2.57 | 3.94 | 12.74 | 11.62 | 2.72 | 0.67 | 5.52 | 1.99 | 0.08 | 0.07 | 0.07 |
| 2000 | 0.29 | 2.95 | 5.71 | 1.84 | 0.32 | 0.15 | 0.39 | 0.16 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.19 |
| 2001 | 0.66 | 2.96 | 3.86 | 3.95 | 1.69 | 0.34 | 0.43 | 0.13 | 0.07 | 0.40 | 0.76 | 0.47 |
| 2002 | 0.19 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.10 | 0.09 | 0.07 | 0.07 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.10 |
| 2003 | 0.16 | 0.19 | 0.10 | 0.31 | 0.50 | 0.31 | 0.10 | 0.06 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.05 |
| 2004 | 0.00 | 0.07 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.07 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.02 | 0.02 | 0.02 |

| Year | Oct | Nov | Dec | Jan | Feb | Mar | ngA | May | Jun | Jul | Aug | Sep |
|--------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|---------------|--------------|----------|------|-------|------|------|-------|
| 1920 | 0.78 | 17.53 | 13.02 | 2.92 | 0.63 | 0.60 | 0.03 | 0.33 | 0.14 | 0.07 | 0.00 | 0.12 |
| 1922 | 5.73 | 6.10 | 1.78 | 4.43 | 3.42 | 1.27 | 0.68 | 0.29 | 0.14 | 0.12 | 0.11 | 0.11 |
| 1923 | 0.11 | 0.13 | 0.31 | 1.21 | 1.74 | 0.88 | 0.38 | 0.19 | 0.12 | 0.08 | 0.07 | 0.20 |
| 1924 | 0.43 | 0.72 | 1.92 | 2.94 | 1.95 | 26.95 | 9.67 | 0.47 | 0.22 | 0.17 | 0.15 | 0.26 |
| 1925 | 0.35 | 0.03 | 0.50 | 0.52 | 2 75 | 16.68 | 5.82 | 0.22 | 0.17 | 0.13 | 0.09 | 0.12 |
| 1927 | 0.22 | 0.28 | 0.49 | 2.45 | 1.69 | 0.84 | 0.52 | 0.23 | 0.11 | 0.07 | 0.07 | 0.12 |
| 1928 | 0.21 | 0.41 | 0.65 | 0.88 | 0.94 | 8.08 | 3.16 | 0.36 | 0.50 | 0.91 | 0.69 | 1.49 |
| 1929 | 4.33 | 2.28 | 0.82 | 1.34 | 0.95 | 0.63 | 0.63 | 0.34 | 0.18 | 0.14 | 0.25 | 0.55 |
| 1930 | 0.67 | 0.71 | 0.81 | 3.46 | 1.68 | 0.56 | 0.52 | 0.25 | 0.12 | 0.19 | 0.24 | 0.19 |
| 1931 | 0.20 | 0.55 | 0.74 | 0.03 | 0.58 | 0.40 | 0.36 | 0.22 | 0.12 | 0.14 | 0.10 | 0.13 |
| 1933 | 0.13 | 0.43 | 3.30 | 6.12 | 2.59 | 2.21 | 3.13 | 1.45 | 0.54 | 0.35 | 0.48 | 0.37 |
| 1934 | 0.25 | 0.26 | 0.56 | 3.43 | 4.26 | 2.38 | 0.96 | 5.85 | 22.21 | 6.96 | 0.57 | 0.44 |
| 1935 | 0.32 | 0.32 | 0.30 | 0.57 | 7.70 | 6.25 | 1.82 | 3.87 | 1.75 | 0.28 | 0.18 | 0.18 |
| 1930 | 0.24 | 0.35 | 6.53 | 3.38 | 8.61 | 2.84 | 0.56 | 0.44 | 0.23 | 0.48 | 0.22 | 0.23 |
| 1938 | 0.43 | 1.84 | 2.08 | 1.22 | 8.21 | 6.23 | 1.82 | 0.65 | 0.47 | 0.31 | 0.28 | 0.54 |
| 1939 | 0.90 | 3.90 | 3.77 | 1.46 | 0.64 | 0.49 | 0.38 | 3.02 | 1.74 | 0.58 | 0.25 | 0.24 |
| 1940 | 0.33 | 6.05 | 4.25 | 1.33 | 0.49 | 0.50 | 0.88 | 0.58 | 0.23 | 0.14 | 0.12 | 0.19 |
| 1941 | 0.32 | 7.07 | 12 01 | 3.89 | 4.00 | 4.03 5.14 | 7 74 | 2 71 | 0.30 | 0.21 | 1.06 | 0.44 |
| 1943 | 5.90 | 6.97 | 2.27 | 0.62 | 0.81 | 4.82 | 2.16 | 0.38 | 0.27 | 0.22 | 0.18 | 0.49 |
| 1944 | 1.31 | 1.11 | 0.65 | 0.49 | 3.33 | 12.15 | 4.24 | 0.42 | 0.25 | 0.14 | 0.12 | 0.12 |
| 1945 | 0.16 | 0.19 | 0.22 | 0.54 | 0.85 | 1.70 | 1.59 | 0.75 | 0.25 | 0.12 | 0.09 | 0.10 |
| 1946 | 0.18 | 2.63 | 0.81 | 1.96 | 4.68 | 3.91 | 3.38 | 0.82 | 0.41 | 0.36 | 0.27 | 0.28 |
| 1948 | 0.40 | 1.93 | 1.25 | 0.81 | 3.72 | 1.64 | 0.83 | 0.57 | 0.25 | 0.14 | 0.12 | 0.12 |
| 1949 | 0.48 | 4.94 | 7.28 | 2.80 | 1.02 | 0.84 | 0.61 | 0.37 | 0.23 | 0.13 | 0.16 | 0.18 |
| 1950 | 0.15 | 0.14 | 0.88 | 1.09 | 0.88 | 3.04 | 1.49 | 0.35 | 0.17 | 0.12 | 0.32 | 0.79 |
| 1951 | 0.84 | 0.67 | 2.75 | 0.25 | 2.50 | 2.77 | 0.80 | 0.80 | 0.49 | 0.24 | 0.21 | 0.19 |
| 1953 | 0.45 | 0.72 | 3.97 | 1.99 | 2.81 | 1.50 | 0.68 | 0.36 | 0.12 | 0.05 | 0.12 | 0.38 |
| 1954 | 13.00 | 6.78 | 1.29 | 6.04 | 2.76 | 4.45 | 2.21 | 0.62 | 0.27 | 0.17 | 0.14 | 0.22 |
| 1955 | 0.48 | 1.05 | 0.96 | 0.53 | 4.54 | 8.08 | 2.88 | 0.49 | 0.23 | 0.15 | 0.19 | 0.41 |
| 1956 | 0.50 | 0.64 | 13.59 | 5.12 | 2.97 | 2.21 | 9.90 | 3.40 | 0.25 | 0.16 | 0.15 | 0.32 |
| 1958 | 0.47 | 1.03 | 1.90 | 1.19 | 0.92 | 0.54 | 0.33 | 0.49 | 0.23 | 0.21 | 0.24 | 0.35 |
| 1959 | 0.63 | 0.86 | 0.78 | 0.65 | 0.73 | 1.40 | 1.08 | 0.52 | 0.21 | 0.12 | 0.11 | 0.13 |
| 1960 | 0.27 | 2.28 | 6.82 | 4.47 | 1.53 | 0.80 | 10.88 | 3.84 | 0.57 | 0.44 | 0.27 | 0.35 |
| 1961 | 0.59 | 0.78 | 0.66 | 0.71 | 0.82 | 1.17 | 0.84 | 0.36 | 0.14 | 0.10 | 0.15 | 0.21 |
| 1962 | 0.35 | 0.32 | 0.54 | 9.43 | 4.02 | 0.62 | 0.51 | 0.29 | 0.28 | 0.47 | 0.43 | 0.30 |
| 1964 | 0.37 | 0.67 | 0.74 | 0.79 | 0.67 | 0.32 | 0.15 | 0.16 | 0.42 | 0.52 | 0.51 | 0.59 |
| 1965 | 0.64 | 0.84 | 0.93 | 2.46 | 1.44 | 0.46 | 0.23 | 0.29 | 0.28 | 0.16 | 0.14 | 0.18 |
| 1966 | 0.24 | 0.51 | 0.81 | 5.57 | 4.73 | 6.70 | 2.72 | 0.60 | 0.22 | 0.14 | 0.12 | 0.10 |
| 1967 | 0.50 | 0.58 | 0.67 | 0.62 | 0.74 | 9.37 | 3.71 | 0.20 | 0.60 | 0.25 | 0.16 | 0.21 |
| 1969 | 2.33 | 3.88 | 2.65 | 1.27 | 0.73 | 0.33 | 0.22 | 0.25 | 0.27 | 0.18 | 0.16 | 0.34 |
| 1970 | 1.12 | 1.12 | 3.16 | 2.88 | 5.12 | 7.35 | 2.64 | 5.63 | 2.26 | 0.42 | 0.69 | 0.83 |
| 1971 | 0.66 | 0.54 | 2.01 | 1.22 | 6.27 | 2.42 | 0.64 | 0.69 | 0.63 | 0.41 | 0.27 | 0.21 |
| 1972 | 1.89 | 3.05 | 1.52 | 3.56 | 9.05 | 3.05 | 0.74 | 0.60 | 0.14 | 0.10 | 0.20 | 0.14 |
| 1974 | 0.14 | 0.27 | 1.20 | 8.94 | 7.60 | 1.85 | 0.48 | 0.31 | 0.17 | 0.12 | 0.11 | 0.40 |
| 1975 | 0.78 | 0.74 | 3.58 | 7.92 | 7.97 | 19.98 | 12.15 | 2.35 | 0.32 | 0.22 | 0.27 | 0.34 |
| 1976 | 1.25 | 1.21 | 0.95 | 4.44 | 14.53 | 5.22 | 0.92 | 0.31 | 0.20 | 0.14 | 0.16 | 0.37 |
| 1977 | 2.18 | 8 14 | 3.04 | 0.91 | 0.91 | 0.65 | 0.41 | 0.30 | 0.23 | 0.10 | 0.18 | 0.29 |
| 1979 | 0.55 | 0.60 | 0.57 | 0.67 | 0.54 | 0.29 | 0.20 | 0.13 | 0.08 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 2.87 |
| 1980 | 1.53 | 2.25 | 1.38 | 5.06 | 4.54 | 1.36 | 0.41 | 0.49 | 0.47 | 0.23 | 0.50 | 1.65 |
| 1981 | 1.24 | 4.11 | 1.75 | 2.46 | 1.50 | 0.86 | 0.79 | 0.42 | 0.19 | 0.12 | 0.10 | 0.10 |
| 1983 | 0.32 | 5.60 | 5.57 | 15.46 | 16.87 | 7.59 | 5.07 | 1.73 | 0.43 | 0.12 | 0.74 | 0.22 |
| 1984 | 0.56 | 0.69 | 0.52 | 3.48 | 20.30 | 6.17 | 0.32 | 0.16 | 0.14 | 0.12 | 0.10 | 0.11 |
| 1985 | 4.75 | 2.42 | 1.46 | 4.55 | 2.18 | 1.77 | 1.13 | 0.41 | 0.18 | 0.13 | 0.14 | 0.16 |
| 1986 | 0.23 | 0.42 | 1.86 | 4.18 | 2.09 | 4.38 | <u> </u> | 0.62 | 0.76 | 0.49 | 0.44 | 31.26 |
| 1988 | 0.47 | 0.79 | 4 44 | 2.03 | 10.14 | 3 67 | 0.75 | 0.40 | 0.22 | 0.44 | 0.44 | 0.47 |
| 1989 | 0.28 | 12.78 | 4.75 | 0.88 | 0.95 | 7.72 | 3.15 | 0.44 | 0.20 | 0.14 | 0.19 | 0.25 |
| 1990 | 0.46 | 0.74 | 3.83 | 2.49 | 8.86 | 9.47 | 2.77 | 0.37 | 0.29 | 0.22 | 0.20 | 0.36 |
| 1991 | 1.05 | 3.04 | 1.39 | 0.62 | 0.57 | 0.31 | 0.22 | 0.13 | 0.10 | 0.08 | 0.07 | 0.09 |
| 1992 | 1.78 | 1.28 | 6 85 | 3.50 | 0.48 | 1.58 | 0.43 | 0.25 | 0.10 | 0.07 | 0.10 | 0.24 |
| <u>19</u> 94 | 0.40 | 0.58 | 0.41 | 0.34 | 0.23 | 0.41 | 3.26 | 1.67 | 0.86 | 0.54 | 0.25 | 0.15 |
| 1995 | 0.29 | 1.42 | 16.70 | 13.67 | 9.59 | 2.68 | 0.73 | 0.32 | 0.16 | 0.55 | 0.68 | 0.40 |
| 1996 | 0.47 | 0.63 | 0.52 | 5.29 | 3.41 | 1.05 | 0.83 | 0.59 | 0.37 | 0.41 | 0.37 | 0.35 |
| 1997 | 0.21 | 0.34 | 0.58 | 0.77 | 4.11 10 50 | 3.63 | 0.53 | 0.31 | 0.17 | 0.12 | 0.13 | 0.18 |
| 1999 | 7.06 | 2.92 | 3.98 | 12.79 | <u>1</u> 1.64 | 2.96 | 0.87 | 5.54 | 2.25 | 0.24 | 0.17 | 0.20 |
| 2000 | 0.41 | 2.98 | 5.80 | 2.22 | 0.65 | 0.44 | 0.51 | 0.38 | 0.19 | 0.13 | 0.11 | 0.21 |
| 2001 | 0.72 | 3.04 | 4.01 | 4.12 | 1.95 | 0.69 | 0.56 | 0.36 | 0.19 | 0.41 | 0.89 | 0.71 |
| 2002 | 0.45 | 0.31 | 0.31 | 0.38 | 0.29 | 0.22 | 0.19 | 0.11 | 0.09 | 0.07 | 0.07 | 0.17 |
| 2004 | 0.15 | 0.20 | 0.16 | 0.18 | 0.18 | 0.12 | 0.09 | 0.05 | 0.03 | 0.03 | 0.03 | 0.03 |

Table 4.4 Simulated monthly flows (in m³/s) to Mhlali Estuary for Reference Condition

1.1.1 Low flows

Winter inflows seldom decreased (~5%) below 0.1 m^3 /s under the Reference conditions (Table 4.5), while under the Present State river inflow below 0.1 m^3 /s occur for 30% of the time.

Table 4.5Summary of the change in low flow conditions to the Mhlali Estuary from the
Reference Condition to the Present State

| Percentile | Monthly | % Pompining | | |
|----------------|---------|---------------|------|--|
| rereentiic | Natural | 70 itemaining | | |
| 30%ile | 0.3 | 0.1 | 39.9 | |
| 20%ile | 0.2 | 0.1 | 35.9 | |
| 10%ile | 0.1 | 0.1 | 43.2 | |
| % Similarity i | 39.7 | | | |

Confidence: Medium

1.1.2 Flood regime

No large dams are present in the Mhlali catchment, any changes in the flood regime of the system would be mostly related to smaller farm dams, land-use change and associated catchment permeability. No flood analysis was done for this study, but an evaluation of the 95 % ile, 99 % ile and 99.9 % ile show that flood events occur relatively untransformed from Reference Condition to Present State, i.e. less than 5% change from Reference Condition.

Confidence: Medium

4.1.2 Hydrological health

Table 4.7 provides a summary of the hydrological health of the Mhlali Estuary.

Table 4.6The hydrological health score

| Variable | Summary of change | Score | Conf |
|---|---|-------|------|
| a.% Similarity in period of low flows | There has been a significant increase in low flow conditions under the Present State. | 40 | М |
| b.% Similarity in mean annual frequency of floods | The simulated monthly flow data indicate that under Reference Conditions floods were about 5 % higher than at present, depending on the size class. | 95 | М |
| Hydrology score | | 62 | |

4.2 PHYSICAL HABITAT

4.2.1 Baseline description

The Mhlali Estuary catchment has been drastically modified and the original marginal and riparian vegetation significantly disturbed. Begg (1978, 1984) described the Mhlali Estuary as being a firm bottomed, sandy system with some areas of soft silt. He emphasised that the system is dominated by siltation arising from "agricultural malpractices" immediately around and upstream of the estuary which could have resulted in the shallowing of the system.

The shallowness of the Mhlali Estuary can be seen on historical aerial photographs (1937, 1967 and 1973) and more recent satellite imagery (2006, 2010 and 2013) of the system (see Figure 4.3 to 4.8). The shallow nature of the estuary is especially noticeable in the latter images where the mouth is open. However, considering the nature of runoff in the region, and the highly erodible soils of the area, the shallowness of the system is, to a degree, attributable to natural erosion process. What is also detectable on the above mentioned images, is the narrowing of the channels in the upper and middle reaches of the estuary due to agricultural activities and vegetation growth.

Under Reference Condition there would have been less sediments coming from the catchment and surrounding environs, e.g the 2006 satellite images shows exposed, unvegetated soils after a sugar cane harvest that poses a severe sedimentation risk for the adjacent estuary. At present, poor land-use practises are leading to more sediment, especially finer fractions, entering the system leading to changes in the sediment structure.



Figure 4.3 Historical image of the Mhlali Estuary - 1937



Figure 4.4 Historical image of the Mhlali Estuary - August 1967



Figure 4.5 A historical image of the Mhlali Estuary - 1973



Figure 4.6 Satellite image of the Mhlali Estuary - 2 June 2006 (Source: Google Earth)


Figure 4.7 Satellite image of the Mhlali Estuary - 9 April 2010 (Source: Google Earth)



Figure 4.8 Satellite image of the Mhlali Estuary - 15 July 2014 (Source: Google Earth)

4.2.2 Physical habitat health

Table 4.8 provides a summary of the physical habitat health of the Mhlali Estuary. About 95% of the impact on the physical habitat was thought to be non-flow related.

| Table 4.7 Calculation of the physical habitat score and adju | usted score (net of non-flow impacts) |
|--|---------------------------------------|
|--|---------------------------------------|

| | Variable | Score | Motivation | | | | | |
|-------|---|--------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|
| 1. Re | semblance of <u>i</u> | ntertidal se | ediment structure and distribution to Reference condition | | | | | |
| 1a | % Similarity in intertidal area exposed | 60 | There has been some loss of intertidal habitat due to deposition and infilling of the intertidal area. Due to an increase in the occurrence of State 1 there is also less exposed intertidal habitat due to increases mouth closure and greater mouth restriction. | М | | | | |
| 1b | % Similarity in sand fraction relative to total sand and mud | 60 | Information is lacking on changes in % similarity in sand fraction relative to total sand and mud, but the score of 60 is based on increase in clay and silt fractions experienced in similar systems, especially in Zone B and C. | М | | | | |
| 2 | Resemblan ce of subtidal estuary to Reference condition: depth, bed or channel morphology | 60 | There has been some infilling of sub-tidal areas as a result of the increase sediment yield from the catchment and sugarcane farming. There is also indications that the bridges are causing localise changes in bathymetry. | М | | | | |
| | Physical habitat score | 60 | | | | | | |

| Anthropogenic influence: | | | | | | | | |
|--|----|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Percentage of overall change in intertidal and supratidal habitat caused by anthropogenic activity as opposed to modifications to water flow into estuary | 95 | Poor agricultural practises and developments in the catchment are causing degradation and changes in sedimentation- this is especially relevant. This is of set to some extend by sand mining??? | М | | | | | |
| Percentage of overall change in sub <u>tidal habitat</u> caused by anthropogenic modifications (e.g. bridges, weirs, bulkheads, training walls, jetties, marinas) rather than modifications to water flow into estuary | 95 | Poor agricultural practises and developments in the catchment are causing degradation and changes in sedimentation. | М | | | | | |

1

4.3 HYDRODYNAMICS

4.3.1 Baseline description

Table 4.9 provides a summary of the hydrodynamics characteristics associated the typical abiotic states occurring in the Mhlali Estuary.

| PARAMETER | State 1: Closed, weeks to months | State 2: Open, limited marine | State 3: Open, fresh | | |
|--------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|
| Flow range (m ^{3/} s) | <0.5 | 0.5 - 3 | >3 | | |
| Mouth condition | Closed | Intermitted closed | Open | | |
| Water level (m to MSL) | 1 - 2 m MSL, can go to 3.0 m MSL just before breaching | Low | Low, except during floods | | |
| Inundation | on Yes, intertidal areas | | No except during floods | | |
| Tidal range | - | 0.25 – 0.5 m | 1 m | | |
| Dominant circulation process | Wind | Tide and river | River | | |
| Retention | > 1 month | Days to weeks | < 1 day | | |

 Table 4.8
 Summary of the abiotic states, and associated hydrodynamic characteristics

4.3.2 Hydrodynamic health

KZN Wildlife weekly mouth observation database shows that the Mhlali Estuary was open for about 48% of the time during the period 1993 to 2013. The record also shows that the system is closed for months at a time.

Table 4.10 provides a summary of the hydrodynamic health of the Mhlali Estuary.

Table 4.9Calculation of the hydrodynamics score

| Variable | Summary of change | Score | Conf |
|--|--|-------|------|
| Hydrodynamics and mouth conditions score | Mouth closure (State 1) occurs for about 59 % of the time under the Present State, while the estuary was closed for about 47% under the Reference Condition. Artificial breaching at low levels are possibly disguising the actual frequency at which this is occurring. | 80 | Н |
| Hydrodynamic score | | 80 | |

4.4 WATER QUALITY

4.4.1 Baseline description

There are very limited water quality data available on the Mhlali Estuary and that which are available vary greatly (Table 4.10):

| | DATES | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Parameter | Aug 1986 ¹ (in estuary) | Nov 1992 ² (in estuary) | Oct 2004 ³ (river just upstream) | | | | | | |
| Temperature (°C) | 20 | 24 | - | | | | | | |
| Salinity | 6 | 6 | 0 | | | | | | |
| рН | - | - | 7 | | | | | | |
| Turbidity (NTU) | - | 2 | - | | | | | | |
| Secchi (m) | 0.14 | 0.17 | - | | | | | | |
| Dissolved oxygen (mg/l) | 7.6 | 7.6 | - | | | | | | |
| NO₃-N (μg/ℓ) | - | 25 | 1 500 | | | | | | |
| NH₄-N (μg/ℓ) | - | 30 | <1 000 | | | | | | |
| PO₄-P (μg/ℓ) | - | 8 | - | | | | | | |

 Table 4.10
 Summary of available water quality data on the Mhlali Estuary

Siza Water manage two WWTW that discharges into the Mhlali, namely Shakaskraal and Tinley Manor WWTW (J Duvenhage, pers. comm. 22 Sep 2014). Details on these discharges are provided below in Table 4.11.

| Table 4.11 | Discharges from Shakaskraal and Tinley Manor WWTW |
|------------|---|
|------------|---|

| Parameter | Shakaskraal WWTW | Tinley Manor WWTW | | | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Discharge location | 3.5 km above head of estuary | Zone C just below N2 bridge | | | |
| Current discharge volume (MI/d) | 0.8 (0.009 m³/s) | 0 | | | |
| Capacity (MI/d) | 1.6 (0.019 m³/s) | 6 (0.07 m³/s) (short term) 18 (0.21 m³/s) (long-term) | | | |
| Estimated NO ₃ -N (μg/ℓ) | 6 000 | 1500 | | | |
| Estimated NH₄-N (µg/ℓ) | 3 000 | 1000 | | | |
| Estimated PO₄-P (µg/ℓ) | 4 000 | 7000 | | | |

Although the Shakaskraal's license agreement requires that the effluent be treated to general limits, Siza Water currently operates the system at average concentrations as listed above (J Duvenhage, Siza Water, pers. comm. 22 Sep 2014). The expected effluent quality for the Tinley Manor WWTW was obtained from the EIA study (Demetriades et al., 2006) (see Figure 4.9 below).

Figure 4.9. Tinley Manor WWTW (just downstream of N2 Bridge



¹ Ramm, Cerf and Harrison, 1986

 ² Harrison, CSIR Durban (unpublished data)
 ³ Geomeasure Group, 2005

In some of the Google maps (e.g. 9 April 2010) it appears as if the channel in Zone C is completely overgrown with vegetation/macrophytes. This, however, needs to be confirmed but if correct it may be related to the WWTW effluent being disposed in this Zone (downstream of the N2 Bridge)

Assuming that this will be the estimated concentrations for the WWTWs are as indicated above, then the expected concentration in river inflow for the Present State and each of the future scenarios is provided in Table 4.10.

| Present (with current Shakaskraal WWTW at 0.8 MI/d) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------|-----------------|-------------|---------------|---------------------|----------|-------|-------------|---------------------|----------------|------------|------------|-------------|--------------|----------|-------|
| | | Flow | | | NO3-N (ug | /I) | | | NH4-N (ug | ;/I) | | DIN (ug/l) | | DIP (ug/l | | |
| Total | Shakaskraal | Tinely Manor | River | Shakaskraal | Tinely Manor | Upstream | River | Shakaskraal | Tinely Manor | Upstream | River | River | Shakaskraal | Tinley Manor | Upstream | River |
| 0.5 | 0.009 | 0.00 | 0.49 | 4000 | 1500 | 200 | 268 | 3000 | 1000 | 50 | 103 | 372 | 4000 | 7000 | 20 | 92 |
| 1.75 | 0.009 | 0.00 | 1.74 | 4000 | 1500 | 200 | 220 | 3000 | 1000 | 50 | 65 | 285 | 4000 | 7000 | 20 | 40 |
| 3 | 0.009 | 0.00 | 2.99 | 4000 | 1500 | 400 | 411 | 3000 | 1000 | 50 | 59 | 470 | 4000 | 7000 | 30 | 42 |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Scenar | io 1 (no WW | rws) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Flow | | | NO3- | N (ug/l) | | | NH4 | 4-N (ug/l) | | DIN (ug/l) | | DI | ' (ug/l) | |
| Total | Shakaskraal | Tinely Manor | River | Shakaskraal | Tinely Manor | Upstream | River | Shakaskraal | Tinely Manor | Upstream | River | River | Shakaskraal | Tinley Manor | Upstream | River |
| 0.5 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.50 | 4000 | 1500 | 200 | 200 | 3000 | 1000 | 50 | 50 | 250 | 4000 | 7000 | 20 | 20 |
| 1.75 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 1.75 | 4000 | 1500 | 200 | 200 | 3000 | 1000 | 50 | 50 | 250 | 4000 | 7000 | 20 | 20 |
| 3 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 3.00 | 4000 | 1500 | 400 | 400 | 3000 | 1000 | 50 | 50 | 450 | 4000 | 7000 | 30 | 30 |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Scenar | io 2 (Shakask | raal 1.6Ml/d ar | nd Tinley M | anor 6 MI/d) | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Flow | | | NO3-N (ug/l) | | | NH4 | 4-N (ug/l) | | DIN (ug/l) | | DIP (ug/l) | | | |
| Total | Shakaskraal | Tinely Manor | River | Shakaskraal | Tinely Manor | Upstream | River | Shakaskraal | Tinely Manor | Upstream | River | River | Shakaskraal | Tinley Manor | Upstream | River |
| 0.5 | 0.019 | 0.07 | 0.41 | 4000 | 1500 | 200 | 526 | 3000 | 1000 | 50 | 295 | 822 | 4000 | 7000 | 20 | 1148 |
| 1.75 | 0.019 | 0.07 | 1.66 | 4000 | 1500 | 200 | 293 | 3000 | 1000 | 50 | 120 | 413 | 4000 | 7000 | 20 | 342 |
| 3 | 0.019 | 0.07 | 2.91 | 4000 | 1500 | 400 | 448 | 3000 | 1000 | 50 | 91 | 539 | 4000 | 7000 | 30 | 218 |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Scenar | io 3 (more ab | straction with | Shakaskraa | l 1.6Ml/d and | d Tinley Manor | 6 Ml/d)) | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Flow | | | NO3- | N (ug/l) | | | NH | 4-N (ug/l) | | DIN (ug/l) | | DI | / (ug/l) | |
| Iotal | Shakaskraal | Tinely Manor | River | Shakaskraal | Tinely Manor | Upstream | River | Shakaskraal | Tinely Manor | Upstream | River | River | Shakaskraal | Tinley Manor | Upstream | River |
| 0.09 | 0.019 | 0.07 | 0.00 | 4000 | 1500 | 200 | 2013 | 3000 | 1000 | 50 | 1412 | 3425 | 4000 | 7000 | 20 | 6289 |
| 1.75 | 0.019 | 0.07 | 1.66 | 4000 | 1500 | 200 | 293 | 3000 | 1000 | 50 | 120 | 413 | 4000 | 7000 | 20 | 342 |
| 3 | 0.019 | 0.07 | 2.91 | 4000 | 1500 | 400 | 448 | 3000 | 1000 | 50 | 91 | 539 | 4000 | 7000 | 30 | 218 |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Scenar | io 4 (Shakask | raal 1.6 Ml/d a | nd Tinley N | lanor 18 Ml/ | <u>d)</u> | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Flow | | | | NO3- | N (ug/l) | | | NH4 | 4-N (ug/l) | | DIN (ug/l) | | DI | ' (ug/l) | | |
| OF | 0.010 | O 21 | 0.27 | 4000 | 1E00 | opstream | River | 3000 | 1000 | Upstream EO | EC1 | 14E2 | snakaskraal | Timey Manor | opstream | 2102 |
| 0.5 | 0.019 | 0.21 | 1.52 | 4000 | 1500 | 200 | 090 | 2000 | 1000 | 50 | 100 | 1452 | 4000 | 7000 | 20 | 5103 |
| 1.75 | 0.019 | 0.21 | 1.52 | 4000 | 1500 | 200 | 397 | 3000 | 1000 | 50 | 196 | 593 | 4000 | 7000 | 20 | 901 |
| 3 | 0.019 | 0.21 | 2.77 | 4000 | 1500 | 400 | 500 | 3000 | 1000 | 50 | 135 | 635 | 4000 | 7000 | 30 | 543 |

| Table 4.12 | Calculation of the nutrient concentration under the various operational flow scenarios |
|------------|--|
| | |

De Villiers and Thiart (2007) estimated natural concentrations of DIN and DIP in these systems as about 50 μ g/ ℓ and 10 μ g/ ℓ , respectively. Estimated DIN and DIP concentrations in seawater along this part of the coast are expected to be 50-100 μ g/ ℓ and 10-20 μ g/ ℓ , respectively. (e.g. DWAF, 1995). This suggests that even if effluent is treated to the estimated "good" effluent concentrations (see above), it can still introduce orders of magnitude higher DIN and DIP concentrations into the estuary, compared with the reference condition. While such treated effluent may be assimilated in larger systems, it becomes a major source of nutrient enrichment in smaller systems, especially during low river flows.

Based on the available data and information, a rough estimate of the water quality characteristics for the various states, in each of the three zones is presented in Table 4.13.

 Table 4.13
 Summary of water quality characteristics of different abiotic states in the Mhlali Estuary (differences in state between reference condition and present state and future scenarios – due to anthropogenic influences other than flow - are indicated)

| PARAMETER | State 1: Closed | State 2: Open, limited marine | State 3: Open, fresh |
|------------------|----------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| Salinity | 10 10 0 | 15 5 0 | 0 0 0 |
| Temperature (°C) | No data, but assumed to be large | y influenced by atmospheric temperatures, i.e. hig | gher in summer compared with winter) |
| pН | | Limited data, assumed to be between 7-8.5 | |
| | Reference | | |
| | 6 6 6 | Reference | |
| | Present/Scenario 1 | 6 6 6 | Reference |
| DO(mal/l) | 6 4 4 | Present/Scenario 1 | 6 6 6 |
| | Scenario 2 | 6 4 4 | Present/Future |
| | 2 2 2 | Scenario 2, 3 and 4 | 6 6 6 |
| | Scenario 3 and 4 | 6 4 2 | |
| | 2 2 0 | i | |
| | | | |
| | Reference | Reference | Reference |
| | 10 10 10 | 10 10 10 | 50 50 50 |
| Turbidity (NTU) | Present/Future | Present/Future | Present/Future |
| | 10 10 20 | 10 10 20 | 200 200 200 |
| | | | |

NOTE: For the purposes of this assessment the estuary was sub-divided into three zones representing from left to right: Zone A (lower), Zone B (middle) and Zone C (upper) (see Figure 3.2)

| PARAMETER | State 1: Closed | | | Stat | State 2: Open, limited marine | | | | State 3: Open, fresh | | | |
|------------|-------------------------|------------------|-----------|----------|-------------------------------|-----------|--|---------------------------|----------------------|-----------|--|--|
| | | Reference | | | Reference | | | | Reference | | | |
| | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 | | 100 | 100 | 100 | | |
| | P | resent (1 WWT | W) | F | Present (1 WWT | W) | | P | resent (1 WWT | W) | | |
| | 300 | 300 | 350 | 200 | 250 | 300 | | 450 | 450 | 450 | | |
| | Scena | rio 1 (without V | WWTW) | Scena | ario 1 (without \ | WWTW) | | Scena | ario 1 (without) | WWTW) | | |
| | 200 | 200 | 250 | 100 | 200 | 250 | | 450 | 450 | 450 | | |
| DIN (ug/l) | Sc | enario 2 (2 WW | TW) | Sc | enario 2 (2 WW | TW) | | Sc | enario 2 (2 WW | /TW) | | |
| | 600 | 600 | 800 | 200 | 300 | 400 | | 550 | 550 | 550 | | |
| | Scenario | 3 (abstraction + | - 2 WWTW) | Scenario | 3 (abstraction - | + 2 WWTW) | | Scenario | 3 (abstraction | + 2 WWTW) | | |
| | 2000 | 2000 | 3500 | 200 | 300 | 400 | | 550 | 550 | 550 | | |
| | Scenario 4 (2 WWTW max) | | | Scen | Scenario 4 (2 WWTW max) | | | Scenario 4 (2 WWTW max) | | | | |
| | 1000 | 1000 | 1500 | 300 | 400 | 600 | | 650 | 650 | 650 | | |
| | Reference | | | | Reference | | | | Reference | | | |
| | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | | 20 | 20 | 20 | | |
| | | Present | | | Present | | | | Present | | | |
| | 70 | 70 | 90 | 20 | 30 | 40 | | 40 | 40 | 40 | | |
| | Scena | rio 1 (without V | VWTW) | Scena | Scenario 1 (without WWTW) | | | Scenario 1 (without WWTW) | | | | |
| DIP (ua/l) | 10 | 10 | 20 | 10 | 20 | 20 | | 30 | 30 | 30 | | |
| | Sc | enario 2 (2 WW | TW) | Sc | Scenario 2 (2 WWTW) | | | | Scenario 2 (2 WWTW) | | | |
| | 800 | 800 | 1100 | 100 | 250 | 350 | | 200 | 200 | 200 | | |
| | Scenario 3 | 3 (abstraction + | - 2 WWTW) | Scenario | 3 (abstraction - | + 2 WWTW) | | Scenario | 3 (abstraction | + 2 WWTW) | | |
| | 4000 | 4000 | 6300 | 100 | 250 | 350 | | 200 | 200 | 200 | | |
| | Scen | ario 4 (2 WWTV | V max) | Scen | ario 4 (2 WWTV | V max) | | Scen | ario 4 (2 WWTV | V max) | | |
| | 2000 | 2000 | 3000 | 600 | 800 | 900 | | 550 | 550 | 550 | | |
| DRS (µg/l) | No data | | | | | | | | | | | |

NOTE: For the purposes of this assessment the estuary was sub-divided into three zones representing from left to right: Zone A (lower), Zone B (middle) and Zone C (upper) (see Figure 3.2)

A summary of the water quality characteristics under the various flow scenarios are provided for each zone in Table 4.14.

| Parameter | Summary of change | Zone | Reference | Present |
|------------------|---|--|-----------|-----------|
| | | Lower | 14 | 14 |
| Salinity | due to increased in low flow conditions under Present state compared with reference | Middle | 9 | 10 |
| | Tresent state compared with reference. | Upper | 1 | 1 |
| | û due to increased nutrient input from | Lower | 83 | 299 |
| DIN (µg/ℓ) | WWTWs) in the estuary increased under Present | Middle | 83 | 312 |
| | state (and future scenarios) compared with reference. | Upper | 83 | 354 |
| | û due to increased nutrient input from anthropogenic sources (e.g. sugar cane and WWTWs) in the estuary increased under Present | Lower | 12 | 53 |
| DIP (µg/ℓ) | | Middle | 12 | 55 |
| | state (and future scenarios) compared with reference. | Upper | 12 | 70 |
| | | Lower | 17 | 40 |
| Turbidity (NTU) | | Middle | 17 | 40 |
| | | Upper | 17 | 49 |
| | ♣ dissolved oxygen level decrease in the estuary | Lower | 6 | 5 |
| DO (μg/ℓ) | during State 1 (Closed) and State 2 (Open limited marine) as a result of organic accumulation from | Middle | 6 | 5 |
| | WWTŴs under Present state (and future scenarios) | Upper | 6 | 5 |
| Toxic substances | | 80% similarity between Reference an Present | | rence and |

Table 4.14Summary of average changes in water quality from Reference Condition to Present State within
each of the various

4.4.2 Water quality health

The similarity in each parameter (e.g. dissolved oxygen) to reference condition was scored as follows:

- Define **zones** along the length of the estuary **(Z)** (i.e. Zones A, B and C)
- Volume fraction of each zone (V) (i.e. Lower = 0.50; Middle = 0.20; Upper = 0.30)
- Different abiotic states (S) (i.e. States 1 to 4)
- Define the flow scenarios (i.e. Reference, Present, Future scenarios)
- Determine the % occurrence of abiotic states for each scenario
- Define WQ concentration range (C) (e.g. 6 mg/l; 4 mg/l; 2 mg/l)

Similarity between Present State, or any Future Scenarios, relative to the Reference Condition was calculated as follows:

- Calculate Average concentration for each Zone for Reference and Present/Future Scenarios, respectively:
- Average Conc (Z_A) = [({∑% occurrence of states in C₁}*C₁)+ ({∑% occurrence of states in C₂}*C₂)+({∑% occurrence of states in C_n}*C_n)] divided by 100
- Calculate similarity between Average Conc's Reference and Present/Future Scenario for each Zone using the Czekanowski's similarity index: Σ(min(ref,pres)/(Σref + Σpres)/2

• For the final scores, a weighted average of the similarity scores of different zones was computed using the volume fractions.

For the final scores, a weighted average of the similarity scores of different zones was computed using the volume fractions (Table 4.15).

| Variable | | Summary of change | Score | Conf |
|---|-------------------------------|---|-------|------|
| 1 | Salinity | | | |
| | Similarity in salinity | û due to increase in low flow conditions. | 97 | L |
| 2 | General water quality in estu | ary | | |
| Α | DIN and DIP concentrations | | 39 | L |
| В | Turbidity (transparency) | û due to increased turbidity from agricultural disturbance especially during higher flows (State 3) | 58 | L |
| С | Dissolved oxygen (mg/l) | Use to organic accumulation from WWTWs especially during State 1 (Close) and State 2 (Open, limited marine) | 93 | L |
| d | Toxic substances | û urban inputs | 80 | L |
| Water quality health score ¹ | | | L | |
| % | of impact non-flow related | | 100 | H |
| Adjusted score | | | | |

 Table 4.15
 Summary of changes and calculation of the water quality health score

¹ Score = (0.6 * 1, +0.4 * (min (2 a. to 2d)))

4.5 MICROALGAE OVERVIEW

i) Main grouping and baseline description

The microalgae component comprises the autotrophic microorganisms, i.e. those that contain chlorophyll and, as a result, are able to convert sunlight into living material. In this capacity they are at the base of the food chain and responsible for most of the food consumed by the primary consumers.

Microalgae are strongly influenced by the open water surface area and water depth which together provides the volume of habitat. The area of intertidal habitat is where microphytobenthic communities provide a considerable foraging area for the primary consumers when under water. The flow regime either provides a stable set of habitats or an unstable set in that low flows generally produce the ideal estuarine condition with seawater underlying fresh water. If the mouth is open for very long periods, low oxygen concentrations can alter the proportions of the microalgal groups

ii) Description of factors influencing microalgae

The factors influencing the different microalgal groups are summarised in Table 4.14. Based on these considerations, the expected influence of the different abiotic states on microalgae is described in Table 4.15.

| Table 4.16 | Effect of abiotic characteristics and processes, as well as other biotic components |
|------------|---|
| | (variables) on various groupings |

| Variable | Phytoplankton | Microphytobenthos |
|-----------------------------|---|---|
| Mouth conditions | Prolonged closure will result in a | Prolonged closure will likely result in a |
| | maximum of benthic microalgae. Very | dominance of cyanophytes as opposed to |
| | short periods of closure with complete | diatoms. Estuary resets once or twice pa is |
| | | optimal |
| Retention times of water | Prolonged closure would likely decrease | Prolonged closure would likely decrease the |
| masses | the species richness. | species richness and the ration of MPB |
| | | groups. |
| Flow velocities (e.g. tidal | A flow that provides a relatively stable | A flow that provides a relatively stable |
| velocities or river inflow | position of the REI is optimal (salinity at | position of the REI is optimal (salinity at the |
| velocities) | the REI ~ 10-15psu | REI ~ 10-15psu |
| Total volume and/or | Total volume is very important but | Total volume is very important but salinity, |
| estimated volume of | salinity, even > 40 psu for short periods | even > 40 psu for short periods (weeks) is |
| different salinity ranges | (weeks) is not harmful. | not harmful. |
| Floods | At least one good scouring each year is | At least one good scouring each year is |
| | optimal because it resets the system and | optimal because it resets the system and the |
| | the species will quickly reappear. | species will quickly reappear. |
| Salinity | Salinity in the range of 5-45 psu is fine for | Salinity in the range of 5-45 psu is fine for |
| | phytoplankton | MPB. |
| Turbidity | Turbidity from a flood is not important but | Long term turbidity (weeks) will affect |
| | long term turbidity may reduce | productivity. |
| | productivity | |
| | An increase in mouth closure in | Prolonged mouth closure together with high |
| Mouth conditions | combination with sedimentation would | organic matter inputs might alter the MPB |
| | decrease the volume for growing | group structure with cyanophytes becoming dominant rather than the diatoms |
| | An increase in retention of the magnitude | An increase in retention of the magnitude |
| Retention times of estuary | described would be very small wrt | described would be very small wrt |
| water | productivity | productivity |

Table 4.17 Summary of Microalgae responses to different abiotic states

| Variable | Grouping | | | |
|----------------------|---|---|--|--|
| Variable | Phytoplankton | Microphytobenthos MPB) | | |
| Open water area | Proportional reduction with loss of open water area (37-16) | Proportional reduction with loss of open water area (43% remaining) | | |
| Salinity | Very little effect when > 5 psu. When < 5 psu there can be a few freshwater species present. Very seldom that freshwater diatoms appear in an estuary sample | Very little salinity effect with estuary MPB. This was established during at prolonged survey at St. Lucia where salinity rose from normal to ~150 psu. | | |
| Mouth condition | Mouth open - Biomass maximum at ~15psu. Vertical salinity gradient. | Mouth never closed - MPB elevated at low flows. | | |
| Water flow rate | Under water high flow rates most of the microalgae are suspended in the water column. | Many diatoms that are commonly benthic (epipelic) are found in the water column. This is especially the case where the fine sediment fraction is suspended due to turbulence | | |
| Water retention time | Phytoplankton biomass elevated at long retention time with diatoms on the sediment. | MPB biomass elevated at long retention time. | | |
| Floods | Only temporary reduction in phytoplankton biomass as a result of flooding. Consumer population also reduced - therefore little effect | Only temporary reduction in MPB biomass as a result of flooding. Consumer population also reduced - therefore little effect. | | |

| Verieble | Grouping | | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| variable | Phytoplankton | Microphytobenthos MPB) | | |
| Turbidity | Because high turbidity occurs at the time of flooding there is very little effect on phytoplankton | Possible small reduction in MPB productivity. | | |
| Water quality | Low nutrient content - maximum species diversity. Diversity decreases at high nutrient levels. | No evidence of a species change at high nutrient levels | | |
| Toxins | Literature indicates that there is an unspecified adverse effect with certain toxins | No information | | |
| Macrophyte community structure | Diatom phytoplankton exchange onto and off submerged aquatic surfaces. | MPB high with high density of rooted aquatic macrophytes. Food availability to juvenile fauna increases - also security. | | |
| Oxygen levels | No effect on phytoplankton | No effect on MPB | | |

iii) Reference condition

Relative change from Reference to Present State are summarised in Table 4.18.

| Table 4.18 | Summar | y of relative changes from Reference Condition to Present State |
|------------|--------|--|
| State | ; | Response |
| State 1 | | During closed conditions much of the microalgal biomass would sink to the sedimen surface. The total biomass would remain largely unchanged |
| | | |

| State 1 | During closed conditions much of the microalgal biomass would sink to the sediment surface. The total biomass would remain largely unchanged |
|---------|---|
| State 2 | With the mouth open on occasions there would be some flow and the high productivity REI area would develop |
| State 3 | As the main state at present the productivity would remain healthy with high productivity boosted by high nutrient levels. |

4.5.1 **Microalgae health**

In the reference state there would have been high flows much of the time. The microalgal groups would probably have differed in that the flagellate community would have been lower than at present. The absence of sugar cane would have left the open water area larger and the biomass would have been lower. Hence the main effect of loss of water area would have been compensated for by the persistent higher growth because of the higher N & P levels. Health scores are summarised in Table 4.19. About 95% of the impact on microalgae was thought to be non-flow related.

| Table 4.19 | Microalgae | component | health | score |
|------------|------------|-----------|--------|-------|
|------------|------------|-----------|--------|-------|

| Variable | Summary of change | Score | Conf |
|-------------------------------|---|-------|------|
| 1. Species richness | Small decrease in community richness and increase in cyanophytes | 95 | L |
| 2. Abundance | Increase in total biomass as a result of increased nutrients | 90 | М |
| 3. Community composition | Very small change due to frequent resetting of the estuary | 95 | М |
| Biotic component health score | | | |
| % of impact non-flow related | | 95 | |
| Adjusted score | | | |

| Key drivers | Change |
|-----------------------------|--------|
| Loss of open water area | 10% |
| Increase in nutrient levels | 20% |
| TOTAL CHANGE | 10% |

4.6 MACROPHYTES

4.6.1 Overview

i) Main grouping and baseline description

Figure 4.9 shows the distribution of macrophyte habitats in 2013 mapped in ArcGis 10.1 using 2013 ESRI[™] basemaps. This map has a low confidence as this was a desktop study with no ground truthing and vegetation mapping in the field. For example the area mapped as swamp forest probably contains a large number of alien invasive trees (Table 4.17).

Observations from the north bank in 2013 showed that swamp forest with lagoon hibiscus (Hibiscus tiliaceus) occurred near the mouth of the estuary where the gradient was unsuitable for sugarcane cultivation. Wild date palm (Phoenix reclinata) and Natal wild banana (Strelitzia nicolai) were also present. Swamp forest likely extends to the middle and upper reaches of the estuary, however this may be coastal forest and a field visit would be needed to confirm this. Common reed (Phragmites australis) and the sedge Schoenoplectus scirpoides fringed the water channel in the lower reaches. The island closest to the mouth consisted of a matrix of grasses, P. australis and H. tiliaceus. A sandbar and rocks were present at the mouth when visited in July 2013.

The Environmental Impact Assessment report (Geomeasure group 2005) for the Tinley Manor WWTW on the south bank below the N2 described the following invasive aquatic macrophytes in the river; water lettuce (Pistia stratiotes), water hyacinth (Eichhornia crassipes) and parrots feather (Myriophyllum aquaticum). The site of the WWTW is approximately 3.5 km from the mouth of the estuary. Algal blooms were also reported in the estuary and were expected to increase as a result of WWTW discharges. For the streambed and adjacent floodplain of the proposed development area extensive infestation by alien plants was reported. Dominant species were Chromolaena odorata, Lantana camara, Eucalyptus species, Pinus species, Brazilian Pepper (Schinus terebinthifolius) and Syringa (Melia azedarach). Indigenous species along the banks were Wild Date Palm (Phoenix reclinata), Pigeon wood (Trema orientalis), Powder Puff Tree (Barrington racemosa), Hewitt's Dwarf Morning Glory (Hewittia malabarica), Umdoni trees (Syzygium cordatum), Quinine tree (Rauvolfia caffra), Natal Mahogany (Trichillia dregeana), Perdepis Clausena anisata and Splendid Acacia (Acacia robusta).

The floodplain has been extensively transformed by sugarcane cultivation. This is also the dominant activity in the catchment which would lead to soil erosion and downstream sedimentation, shallowing and macrophyte encroachment into the main river channel. According to the Tinley Manor EIA report (Geomeasure group 2005) "Large areas of the riparian zone and its buffers have been artificially drained and cultivated for sugarcane whilst remaining areas are infested with alien plants." The general impression is of an extensively degraded system.

Table 4.20Macrophyte habitats and functional groups recorded in the estuary with examples of
dominant species in italics

| Habitat type | Distribution | Area (ha) |
|---------------------------------|---|--------------|
| Open surface water area | Serves as a possible habitat for phytoplankton. | 25 |
| Intertidal sand and mudflats | Intertidal zone consisting of sand/mud banks that provides area for microphytobenthos to inhabit. This was not mapped but is a dynamic habitat that would change over time in response to floods and dry periods. | |
| Swamp forest | Lagoon hibiscus (Hibiscus tiliaceus) and other trees occur behind the reeds and sedges in the lower reaches of the estuary | 25 |

Reeds and sedges

Common reed (Phragmites australis) and Schoenoplectus scirpoides fringed the water channel.



Figure 4.10. Distribution of macrophyte habitats at Mhlali Estuary in 2013.

ii) Description of factors influencing macrophytes

The effect of abiotic characteristics and processes, as well as other biotic components on macrophyte habitats is described in Table 4.21.

| Table 4.21 | Effect of abiotic characteristics and processes, as well as other biotic components |
|------------|---|
| | (variables) on macrophyte habitats |

| Variable | Grouping | | | |
|--|---|--|--|--|
| variable | Reeds and sedges | Swamp forest | | |
| Mouth conditions | An increase in mouth closure in combination with sedimentation and nutrient inputs would cause expansion of macrophytes into the main water channel. | H. tilicaeus is able to withstand basal inundation caused by mouth closure for long periods. | | |
| Retention times of water masses | An increase in retention time and high nutrient levels would encourage growth of reeds, hygrophilous grasses, algal blooms and invasive floating macrophytes. | | | |
| Flow velocities (e.g. tidal velocities or river inflow velocities) | There has been a small decrease in base flow but floods have remained largely natural. Floods are important in resetting the estuary and clearing the channel of macrophyte growth. | | | |
| Total volume and/or estimated volume of different salinity ranges | The estuary is mostly fresh with reeds, sedges and swamp forest dominant. | | | |
| Floods | Floods remain similar to natural conditions. Large floods would scour the estuary removing vegetation and creating more open water surface area. | | | |
| Salinity | Salinity ranges are within favourable conditions for reed and swamp forest growth. Some salinity intrusion during the open mouth phase would be important in restricting the expansion of aquatic invasive macrophytes such as water hyacinth and parrot's feather. | | | |
| Turbidity | The estuary has become more turbid during high flow conditions (State 3) due to agriculture disturbance and run-off from the catchment. This together with high flow would prevent the | | | |

Reserve Determination Studies – Mvoti to Mzimkulu WMA: Technical Component Page 31 Rapid level assessment: Mhlali Estuary

| Variable | Grouping | | |
|---|---|--------------|--|
| variable | Reeds and sedges | Swamp forest | |
| | establishment of submerged macrophytes. | | |
| Dissolved oxygen | Organic accumulation from WWTWs under present conditions has resulted in a lower DO compared to natural conditions. This would not impact the macrophytes. | | |
| Nutrients | WWTW inputs and sugarcane cultivation has greatly increased nutrient concentrations in the estuary. High nutrients levels encourage the proliferation of Phragmites spp. and other macrophytes. | | |
| Sediment characteristics (including sedimentation) | Extensive agriculture in the catchment and on the surrounding estuary banks has resulted in erosion, run-off and sedimentation in the estuary. Sedimentation would encourage macrophyte growth particularly into the main estuary channel. | | |
| Other biotic components | Large areas of estuarine habitat have been removed for sugarcane cultivation. Invasive plants have proliferated in the floodplains of this estuary displacing indigenous species. Little natural habitat remains although there is always the potential for rehabilitation. | | |

The impacts of different abiotic states on the macrophytes groups is summarised in Table 4.22.

| State | Response |
|---------|---|
| State 1 | During closed conditions salinity becomes homogenous in the lower and middle reaches and the estuary is not turbid. Dieback of reeds and sedges may occur in response to an increase in water level and flooding. |
| State 2 | Mouth intermittently open, longitudinal salinity gradient develops. Salinity is within the tolerance range of reeds and swamp forest. |
| State 3 | Estuary is fresh and turbid, together with nutrient input the growth of reeds would be encouraged. |

| Table 4.22 | Summary of Macrophyte responses to different abiotic states |
|------------|---|
|------------|---|

ii) Reference condition

It is likely that under natural conditions reeds (*P.* australis) and swamp forest (*H.* tiliaceus) were dominant. However there has been a proliferation of reeds due to sedimentation and nutrient input and the swamp forest habitat has been invaded by exotic species such as Brazilian pepper. Begg (1978) described swamp forest with a few scattered clumps of freshwater mangrove (Barringtonia racemosa) on the southern bank of Mhlali Estuary. Beds of Phragmites spp. occurred on the island between the two arms of the system. Echinocloa sp. grass was growing above the weir. A mild bloom of the alga Chaetomorpha sp. was reported during open mouth conditions in 1981. Barringtonia racemosa was not evident during our site visit, but may still be present in the estuary as mentioned in the 2005 EIA report (Geomeasure group 2005).

There have been major losses of macrophyte habitat due to the removal for the cultivation of sugarcane Table 4.23. Over 70 % of reed habitat has been lost to sugarcane cultivation. Changes associated with mouth state and nutrient concentrations may have also affected macrophyte abundance and distribution. A reduction in MAR and increase in low flow conditions has encouraged macrophytes to spread thus decreasing open water habitat. Invasive species in the riparian zone have likely displaced some indigenous species.

Table 4.23Comparison of area (ha) for the different macrophyte habitats at Mhlali Estuary under
natural, earliest aerial imagery (1937) and present (2013) conditions.

| Macrophyte habitat | Natural | 1937 | 2013 |
|-----------------------|---------|------|------|
| Open Water | 40 | 40 | 25 |
| Sand/mud flats | 10 | 10 | 0 |
| Reeds and sedges | 45 | 30 | 11 |
| Swamp forest | 28 | 16 | 25 |
| Floodplain | 42 | 42 | 24 |
| Disturbed floodplain | 0 | 0 | 30 |
| Sugarcane cultivation | 0 | 27 | 49 |
| Development | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| TOTAL | 165 | 165 | 165 |

Table 4.24Summary of relative changes from the Reference Condition to Present state.

| Key drivers | Change |
|--|--|
| Sugarcane cultivation in the floodplain | |
| û nutrients from catchment activities | $\hat{\mathbf{T}}$ growth of all macrophytes, in particular reed, sedge and grass expansion as well as invasive aquatics. |
| û mouth closure | Estuary experiences an increase in mouth closure and thus remains fresh and turbid. Calm sheltered conditions encourage growth of aquatic invasives. |
| î sedimentation | $\hat{\mathbf{u}}$ habitat for reeds and sedges, infilling in upper reaches lead to vegetation encroachment in the middle-upper reaches. |
| TOTAL CHANGE | $\hat{\mathbf{t}}$ aquatic invasives, some localised increases in reeds and sedges, loss of open water area in the middle-upper reaches. |

4.6.2 Macrophyte health

Health scores are summarised in Table 4.24. About 80% of the impact on macrophytes was thought to be non-flow related.

| Table 4.25 | Macroph | yte com | ponent | health | score |
|------------|---------|---------|--------|--------|-------|
| | | - | | | |

| Variable | Summary of change | Score | Conf |
|-------------------------------|--|-------|------|
| 1. Species richness | Sugarcane cultivation in the floodplain and invasive species have displaced some indigenous species | | L |
| 2. Abundance | Sugarcane cultivation has reduced the area of macrophytes. Reed and sedge habitat have declined by over 70 % since natural conditions. There have been some localised increases in reeds and sedges due to infilling and shallowing as well as high nutrient input. | | L |
| 3. Community composition | Under natural conditions reeds, sedges would have been dominant on the floodplain. At present, however, a large area is covered by disturbed habitat and sugarcane. The increase in low flow and input of nutrients from the WWTW has caused macrophytes to cover large areas of the water channel and open sand and mud banks resulting in loss of this habitat. Aquatic invasive plants are present. | | L |
| Biotic component health score | | | |

| % of impact non-flow related | 80 | |
|------------------------------|------|--|
| Adjusted score | 61.2 | |

4.7 INVERTEBRATES

4.7.1 Overview

i) Main grouping and baseline description

The macrobenthic invertebrates or benthos refers to those organisms, attached to, living on (epifauna) or in (infauna) the substratum. The species composition, abundance and spatial distribution of these benthic macrofaunal communities may fluctuate widely both spatially and temporally. These variations may be ascribed to normal fluctuations of reproduction, recruitment and mortality as well as aperiodic changes due to random environmental fluctuations in physical or chemical conditions. The biomass of benthic invertebrates in unpolluted and healthy estuaries and coastal embayments is often high. It declines if communities are affected by prolonged periods of poor water quality especially when anoxia and hypoxia are common.

The most visible feature of the benthos in this system is the wide distribution of the burrowing prawn or "cracker" Callianassa kraussi, whose burrows were abundant in the mouth area and up both the north and south channels. Previous MER surveys carried out in 2008 produced 23 taxa dominated by polychaete worms and amphipod crustaceans.

iii) Description of factors influencing invertebrate fauna

The mouth dynamics critically influence any estuarine environment in terms of i.a. the presence or absence of inter-tidal areas, salinity gradients, sediment suspension, causing increased turbidity, sediment sorting and dispersal by tidal currents and animal migration between the estuarine and marine environments. While permanently open and temporarily open/closed systems have distinct and regionally significant estuarine functions it would be of importance to establish whether the breaching pattern of the uMhlali has changed because of river flow modification. It has, for instance, been established in the case of the oHlanga that water added to the system by treatment works in the catchment has increased the breaching frequency and resulted in major, mainly adverse, changes in the functioning of this system.

The salinity conditions prevailing in the estuary during the course of the survey were generally tolerable as far as estuarine organisms are concerned but extended periods of salinities below the measured general lower levels of ca. 5 would be expected to reduce the faunal diversity.

Dissolved oxygen levels in water are highly susceptible to biological influences either through the reducing effects of organic decomposition or the destabilising effects of nutrient enhanced daytime photosynthesis followed by nocturnal respiration. The oxygen levels recorded in the uMhlali estuary, particularly in the deeper waters of the upper reaches following extended periods of mouth closure are already cause for concern. Added nutrients and organic materials, over and above the already excessive loads, could well result ultimately in deoxygenated conditions and fish kills which have become virtually commonplace in eThekwini estuaries.

The abundance of C. kraussi indicates regular penetration of seawater into the system as this species is incapable of breeding in very low salinities. Collection of C. kraussi for bait was noted at the start of the survey when the mouth was open and the water shallow during low tide periods. Comparison of the benthic community data with those from the 16 eThekwini estuaries (MER, unpublished) indicate that in comparison with the very few relatively pristine temporarily open/closed systems, there was some reduction in the abundance and variety of molluscs and isopod crustaceans suggesting some degree of degradation. The increase in total individual abundance from July to October coincided with an extended period of predominant mouth closure which has been shown in other similar systems to enhance the development of the benthic fauna.

It is an arguable point that the total area and volume of the estuary have been reduced over the last century through infilling and mouth breaching practices. Equally there appears to have been a change in the pattern of mouth breaching but reliable historical data are lacking. The benthic community shows some indication of degradation The most disturbing aspects of the uMhlali estuary in the present context are the high nutrient and bacterial levels and the abundance of the invasive alien snail Tarebia granifera. Added nutrients and organic material, the latter often derived from enhanced plant growth resulting in turn from added nutrients, have been shown in other systems such as the uMdloti and oHlanga to result in deoxygenation and depletion of faunal populations. It is also disturbing that the bacterial levels recorded strongly indicate a danger to human health. This situation is in contrast to that described by Harrison, Cooper & Ramm (2000) who classified the water quality, on the basis of its suitability for aquatic life in terms of dissolved oxygen, unionized ammonia and oxygen absorbed, human contact in terms of faecal coliform levels and trophic status in terms of nitrate nitrogen and ortho-phosphate as "good". The significance of the invasive snail has not been investigated but it is spreading rapidly in coastal freshwater and estuarine environments in the province and it would be naïve to assume that there is no long term significance.

Table 4.27 provides a summary of the invertebrate groupings responses to various abiotic and biotic processes.

| State | Response |
|---------|---|
| State 1 | During closed conditions salinity gradient disrupted and system freshens excluding estuarine species and reducing overall diversity. Dissolved oxygen reductions possible. |
| State 2 | Mouth intermittently open, longitudinal salinity gradient develops. Salinity is within the tolerance range of a range of estuarine and marine species resulting in increased diversity and better water quality due to dilution and flushing. Improved water quality can result in increased abundance. |
| State 3 | Estuary freshens and steady outflow from the system –invertebrate species tolerant of fresh, turbid condition found under this state – often dominate by Insecta. |

| Table 4.26 | Summary of Invertebra | te responses to different abiotic states |
|------------|-----------------------|--|
|------------|-----------------------|--|

iii) Reference condition

| Table 4.27 | Summar | y of relative changes f | rom Reference | Condition to Present state |
|------------|--------|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------------|
|------------|--------|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------------|

| Key drivers | Change |
|--|---|
| Sugarcane cultivation in the floodplain | \clubsuit habitat diversity and spatial availability results in decrease in invertebrate diversity and predominantly abundance. |
| nutrients from catchment activities | \hat{u} invasive species such as Tarebia granifera ? but predominantly changes in water quality and dissolved oxygen in particular eliminating the less tolerant species from the system and preventing succession within this community. |
| ৫ mouth closure | Greater stability but clearer water and fresher conditions. Eliminates more typical estuarine species from occurring in the system |
| TOTAL CHANGE | \hat{u} loss of open water area and benthic substrate habitats, \hat{u} freshening resulting in exclusion of species and anoxic conditions |

4.7.2 Invertebrate health

Health scores for the invertebrate component are provided in Table 4.29. About 80% of the impact on invertebrates was thought to be non-flow related.

| Variable | Summary of change | Score | Conf |
|-------------------------------|--|-------|------|
| 1. Species richness | Approximately 70% of the original species remain. Species losses are primarily associated with anthropogenic effects such as habitat loss, water quality effects and artificial breaching. It is estimated that more estuarine species occurred in the past when more estuarine benthic habitat was available with a higher diversity fo habitat. | 70 | |
| 2. Abundance | Loss of water column and benthic habitat by infilling and loss of the prolonged closed phase has reduced the carrying capacity of the system moving away from the reference condition. | 40 | |
| 3. Community composition | Absence of typical estuarine species with the loss of the development of a climax invertebrate community changes the relative proportions of the estuarine r and k strategists. Appearance of the alien snail Tarebia granifera in the system has moved the system further from reference condition. | 50 | |
| Biotic component health score | | | |
| % of impact non-flow related | | | |
| Adjusted score | | | |

| Table 4.28 | Invertebrate component health score |
|------------|-------------------------------------|
|------------|-------------------------------------|

4.8 FISH

4.8.1 Overview

i) Main grouping and baseline description

Fishes with a variety of life histories use South African estuaries and several estuarine association guilds have been applied to categorise the estuarine ichthyofauna (Table 4.30). Most widely used has been that of Whitfield (1994, see below), although more recent refinements have applied (e.g. Harrison and Whitfield 2008) based on functional use categories more globally applicable (e.g. Elliot et al. 2007).

Table 4.29Classification of South African fish fauna according to their dependence on estuaries
(Whitfield 1994)

| Category | Description |
|----------|---|
| 1 | Truly estuarine species, which breed in southern African estuaries; subdivided as follows: |
| la | Resident species which have not been recorded breeding in the freshwater or marine |
| | environment |
| lb | Resident species which have marine or freshwater breeding populations |
| 11 | Euryhaline marine species which usually breed at sea with the juveniles showing varying |
| | degrees of dependence on southern African estuaries; subdivided as follows: |
| lla | Juveniles dependent of estuaries as nursery areas |
| llb | Juveniles occur mainly in estuaries, but are also found at sea |
| llc | Juveniles occur in estuaries but are more abundant at sea |
| 111 | Marine species which occur in estuaries in small numbers but are not dependent on these |
| | systems |
| IV | Euryhaline freshwater species that can penetrate estuaries depending on salinity tolerance. |
| | Includes some species which may breed in both freshwater and estuarine systems. |
| V | Catadromous species which use estuaries as transit routes between the marine and freshwater |
| | environments. Includes the following subcategories: |
| Va | Obligate catadromous species |
| Vb | Facultative catadromous species |

For the purposes of this assessment Whitfield's categorisation (above) was used as a basis to classify fishes as:

- Estuarine resident: Species that complete their life cycles in South African estuaries (Whitfield's categories la and lb).
- Estuarine dependent marine: Species which breed at sea with the juveniles dependent on South African estuaries (Whitfield's categories IIa, IIb and Vb).

- Marine: Species which use South African estuaries opportunistically, but are not dependent upon these systems to complete their life cycles (Whitfield's categories IIc and III).
- Freshwater: Species which can (and mostly do) complete their life cycles in fresh water (Whitfield's category IV).
- Catadromous: Anguillid eels, which use estuaries only as transit routes between the marine and freshwater environments (Whitfield's category Vb).

There are of course other ways of categorising, or grouping, components of estuarine fish assemblages. Feeding guilds are another common approach and in this respect most South African species can be assigned to categories as being:

- Detritivores: Species that feed predominantly on detritus, deriving nutrition from bacteria on decaying vegetation and microphytobenthos.
- Zooplanktivores: Species that feed on zooplankton, mostly small crustaceans.
- Zoobenthivores: Species that feed on benthic invertebrates living on, or in the sediments.
- Piscivores: Species that prey upon other fishes.

Fishes in the Mhlali estuary have been sampled on four (documented) occasions in the last 20 years and a wide range of species (51) has been recorded (Appendix B). These include representatives from all functional estuarine use groups and the main trophic categories. Estuarine dependant fishes dominate the assemblage accounting for 21 of the 51 tax reported. They also dominate by abundance and on average have accounted for 64% of fishes sampled in the estuary. This is a slight under estimate. Begg's surveys relied upon beam trawling only as a means of sampling (Begg 1984a). This gear is biased towards smaller, slower moving species, often estuarine resident species at the expense of larger, faster swimming fishes, often estuarine dependent species. Indeed, Begg (1984a) noted that mullet occurred in far greater abundance in the estuary than indicated by beam trawl results.

The full species array is one typical of KwaZulu-Natal temporary open/closed estuaries, with some noted exceptions. Antennarius striatus and Pterois miles are species not normally associated with estuaries but which rather occur in marine waters and Himantura uarnak occurs in open estuaries, but seldom in temporary open/closed systems in KwaZulu-Natal. These fishes, all reported by Begg (1984a) occurred in low abundance during open mouth phases and the former two were encountered only when salinity maximums were at, or very close to that of seawater. Their occurrence should be regarded as chance.

ii) Description of factors influencing fish

A wide variety of factors influence fish in TOCEs. The main flow related factors influencing fish in the Mvoti estuary are listed below (Table 4.31). A summary of fish responses to different estuarine states is given in Table 4.32.

| | Grouping | | | |
|---------------|--|---|---|---|
| Variable | Estuarine resident | Estuarine dependent marine | Marine | Freshwater |
| Mouth closure | Mouth condition has sig estuarine connectivity. the estuary. Under natu conditions on elevated pertinent with prolonged | gnificant direct effects on es It also has secondary effec ıral conditions salinity is the nutrient inputs and organic d mouth closure. | stuarine biota as the prox ts via its impacts on phys e most relevant paramete loads oxygen concentrat | imal determinant of marine ico-chemical conditions in r in this regard, but under ion becomes increasingly |
| | Most resident species proliferate under closed mouth conditions. Salinity regimes support the full array of estuarine | Recruitment of marine spawning fishes is reduced by prolonged mouth closure but short periods of closure may benefit estuarine | Recruitment of marine spawning fishes is reduced by prolonged mouth closure. Salinity regimes are also not | Increase in abundance of selected salinity tolerant species, most notably Oreochromis mossambicus. Under present day nutrient loads, water quality becomes limiting during prolonged |

Table 4.30Effect of abiotic characteristics and processes, as well as other biotic components
(variables) on various groupings

Reserve Determination Studies – Mvoti to Mzimkulu WMA: Technical Component Rapid level assessment: Mhlali Estuary

| | breeding species. | dependent species that | supportive of the | mouth closed conditions |
|-----------|---|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| | Water quality | are already in the | great majority of | low dissolved oxygen levels) but tolerant |
| | becomes limiting | system. Numbers of | marine species. | species are likely to |
| | under present day | species and abundance | Numbers of species | persist and proliferate. |
| | conditions due to low | declines with prolonged | and abundance | |
| | oxygen levels | mouth closure. Under | declines markedly | |
| | (associated with | present day nutrient | with prolonged mouth | |
| | nutrient loads to the | loads, water quality | closure. | |
| | system). | becomes limiting during | | |
| | | prolonged mouth | | |
| | | closed conditions (low | | |
| | | dissolved oxygen | | |
| | | levels). This results in a | | |
| | | reduced estuarine | | |
| | | dependent marine | | |
| | | fishes. | | |
| Floods | Floods open and scour | the system of sediments a | nd marginal vegetation a | nd are important in |
| | maintaining habitat suita | able for estuarine and estu | arine dependent species. | Prolonged periods without |
| | floods allow bank veget | tation to encroach into shal | low areas and the estuar | y is canalised by stands of |
| | reeds. This reduces hal | bitat complexity of open wa | ters (subtidal and intertid | al sand flats). This |
| | negatively affects the e | stuarine fish assemblage, k | out benefits freshwater sp | pecies. |
| | The larvae of resident Juvenile and adults leave the estuary, but can Floods may flush some | | | |
| | species are washed | return on receding floodw | aters, aided by tidal | individuals downstream |
| | into the sea at the | intrusion. Juvenile marine | e spawning species and | and even out to sea, |
| | onset of floods. | catadramous species use | e floodwaters in the sea | where mortalities can |
| | Juveniles and adults | as a cue for locating and | migrating into | occur because of |
| | of small bodied | estuaries. | | osmoregulatory shock. |
| | species may also be | | | |
| | affected. | | | |
| Prey | Food resources are an | obvious driver of fish comp | osition and abundance ir | the estuary. Prey |
| abundance | abundance is impacted | by various variables relate | d to flow, including those | listed above. Prey |
| | abundance is included | as a main factor affecting fi | shes here because there | is little doubt that it has |
| | affected fishes marked | y in the Mhlali. | | |
| | Estuarine resident | Juveniles and adults of m | nost species are benthic | The dominant freshwater |
| | species that occur | feeders, although larval a | nd early stage | species in the estuary is |
| | most abundantly are | juveniles of many species | s prey on zooplankton. | detritivores and shown |
| | zooplankton feeders. | Larger fishes prey on larg | per crustaceans in the | high plasticity in diet. It is |
| | Zooplankton | estuary, particularly sand | prawn and penaeid | resilient to trophic |
| | abundance increases | prawns. These prey items | s (particularly the latter) | changes in the system. |
| | under closed mouth | are sensitive to estuarine | changes and have | |
| | conditions. | undergone marked declin | es in recent history. | |
| | | Mullet are detritivores and | d food resources are | |
| | | less impacted. | | |
| | | | | |

Table 4.31 Summary of fish responses to different abiotic states

| State | Response |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| State 1: Closed, weeks to months | High water levels and increased estuary volume result in greater water column productivity and benefit most species that are in the estuary. Estuarine resident species especially benefit from reduced predation and increased zooplankton abundance. Detritivorous estuarine dependent dishes (mullet) also benefit, but prolonged closure restricts recruitment potential of these and other estuarine dependent marine fishes. Intertidal habitat is lost. Some freshwater species will be affected by higher salinities and precluded from the lower and middle reaches of the estuary. Inundation of vegetation provides improved habitat for these species however. Under current nutrient inputs, prolonged mouth closure will result in poor water quality conditions. Low oxygen concentrations will be detrimental and limit fish abundance and diversity. The main freshwater species, however, is tolerant of salinities and expected oxygen concentrations throughout the system and will proliferate. |
| State 2: Open, limited | A good salinity gradient creates conditions that support the highest diversity of estuarine |

Reserve Determination Studies – Mvoti to Mzimkulu WMA: Technical Component Rapid level assessment: Mhlali Estuary

| State | Response |
|----------------------|--|
| State | Kesponse |
| marine | associated fishes in the estuary. Habitat diversity (subtidal and intertidal) plays an added |
| | role in this. Recruitment of marine spawning species is not limited by mouth state. All fish |
| | guilds occur in the estuary, although freshwater species are mostly limited to the middle |
| | and upper reaches. Oreochromis mossambicus may occur in the lower reaches, but only |
| | sporadically. Importantly, salinity conditions in the lower reaches support an abundance of |
| | estuarine prawns that are an important component of the diets of several important |
| | estuarine dependent fish species. |
| | Estuarine residents will occur throughout the estuary, but preferred habitat and prey |
| | abundance for these species is reduced. Recruitment of marine spawning species is not |
| | limited by mouth state, but low salinities preclude use of the estuary by marine fishes and it |
| | is likely that even most estuarine dependent marine fishes will be limited to using the lower |
| State 3: Open, fresh | reaches of the system. Select estuarine dependent species (Myxus capensis, Mugil |
| | cephalus, Valamugil cunnesius most abundantly) will occur throughout. Prey abundance |
| | and availability for benthic feeding estuarine dependent species is reduced and this is |
| | reflected in reduced fish abundance. Freshwater fishes will be represented by O. |
| | mossambicus occurring in all reaches of the estuary. |

iii) Reference condition

Under reference conditions, the Mhlali estuary occurred in a predominantly open marine phase during the wet season months of November through to April. This provided optimum conditions for estuarine dependent fishes to recruit into the estuary and access abundant prey resources. Over the dry months of May to October, the system was predominantly (but not permanently) closed. A good mix of water column (plankton) and benthic productivity supported the full array of species from all life history and trophic guilds. Sediment and nutrient loads to the estuary were natural and the system was likely deeper with less vegetation encroachment than present, most notably in the upper reaches. Overall, the esturay had a greater area of open water habitat and sand and mud flats. These conditions supported an abundance of estuarine crustaceans and fishes.

The Mhlali estuary appears to have been a TOCE that historically supported a particularly diverse fauna. Of sixty systems surveyed south of the Thukela in the early 1980s the Mhlali supported the 4th most species (fishes and crustaceans) (Begg 1984b). Indeed, number of species in the system was higher than that reported for several permanently open estuaries.

Significant changes have occurred. The estuary occurs in a closed mouth state (State 1) much more frequently than under reference condition, and in an open, limited marine condition (State 2) much less frequently. This has implications for recruitment of marine spawning species. Prevailing salinity gradients are also impacted although, in terms of water quality variables, this has less of an impact on the fish fauna than low oxygen concentrations caused by high nutrient loads to the estuary (which is exacerbated by increased and prolonged mouth closure). Habitat quality has also degraded significantly from the reference condition. Sedimentation has occurred which has resulted in loss of system volume, but probably more significant is the encroachment of vegetation into the estuary, especially in the upper reaches. This has decreased water habitat.

Changes in the systems mouth dynamics, water quality and habitats have also had negative impacts on fishes favoured prey species. Prey abundances for benthic feeding fishes in particular appear to have suffered marked declines. An outstanding feature of the invertebrate fauna of the Mhlali estuary in the early 1980s was the abundance of penaeid prawns (Begg 1984a). The system supported higher abundances of Fenneropenaeus indicus than any other system surveyed by

Begg (1984a). This undoubtedly provided a rich food source for the diversity of estuarine dependent fishes sampled in the system, including several line fish species.

A summary of present day changes compared to reference conditions is given in Table 4.33 below.

| Key drivers | Change |
|-------------------|--|
| Mouth closure | Under reference state a higher frequency of open, limited marine conditions (State 2) occurred. Present state sees increased frequency and duration of mouth closure (State 1). This limits recruitment of marine spawning species. Abundance of these fishes is consequently decreased. |
| Water quality | Although most species in the system tolerate the different salinity regimes under all defined states the salinity gradient under open, limited marine conditions (State 2) is most beneficial to estuarine dependent (and a limited number of marine) species. Reduction in the frequency of this state and its associated salinity gradient further limit the number and abundance of marine spawning species. More significant however, is degraded water quality from excessive nutrient loads delivered to the system. This results in depressed oxygen concentrations which limit the diversity and abundance of all fishes, with the exception on the freshwater O. mossambicus. |
| Habitat | Losses in intertidal and subtidal habitat have occurred. This is governed by sedimentation, reduced flood frequency, increased nutrients and encroachment of vegetation. This reduces the abundance of all estuarine fishes in the estuary. Some freshwater species may have benefited from increased marginal vegetation. |
| Prey availability | A marked reduction in the abundance of penaeid prawns has occurred, limiting prey availability for select estuarine dependent species, and therefore their abundance in the estuary. |

 Table 4.32
 Summary of relative changes from Reference Condition to Present state.

4.8.2 Fish health

The Present Ecological State of the Mhlali fish assemblage is described and scored in Table 4.34 below. About 80% of the impact on fish was thought to be non-flow related.

| Variable | Summary of change | Score | Conf |
|-------------------------------|---|-------|------|
| 1. Species richness | Species richness is reduced compared to the reference condition. There is increased mouth closure, but the estuary does open over the main recruitment periods for estuarine dependent marine fishes. Loss of recruitment potential is therefore limited. Salinity regimes during the closed phase also support all the main species. Water quality (depressed oxygen concentrations) impacts species richness. Added to the loss of estuary area which has occurred with subtidal and intertidal habitat losses, this results in the system supporting fewer species. | 70 | L |
| 2. Abundance | Reduced recruitment noted above is likely to have some impact on the abundance of estuarine dependent fishes. Specialist overwash recruiters (e.g. Rhabdosargus. holubi and Myxus capensis) will be less impacted and are likely to dominate the estuarine dependent component of the fish community. Loss of aquatic habitats (intertidal banks, subtidal area) and reed encroachment also reduces fish abundance. Overfishing has also impacted stocks of some key species (including mullet for bait, which are susceptible to cast netting in this shallow system). Loss of subtidal and intertidal area, as well as backfill habitat causes a reduction in estuarine nursery function and fish abundance. Water quality (high nutrient loads and reduced oxygen concentrations) probably plays the most significant role in limiting abundance of key fish species. | 60 | L |
| 3. Community composition | Reed encroachment has impacted large areas, replacing open water sandbanks. This markedly changes species composition to one that is dominated by freshwater species (Oreochromis mossambicus) from one previously dominated by mullet (and other estuarine dependent) species. | 60 | L |
| Biotic component health score | | 60 | |
| % of impact non-flow related | | 80 | |
| Adjusted score | | 92 | |

 Table 4.33
 Fish component health score

4.9 BIRDS

Main fa

4.9.1 Overview

i) Main grouping and baseline description

The aquatic avifauna of the Mhlali Estuary is very poorly known. The site is not included in the nation-wide Co-ordinated Waterbird Counts Project of the Animal Demography Unit, University of Cape Town. The estuary is relatively inaccessible, at least partially explaining this dearth of knowledge. It is not regularly visited by bird-watchers.

For the purposes of this study, the birds found on the estuary have been grouped into six groups (Table 4.35).

| guilds | Defining features and typical/dominant species |
|---|--|
| Swimming piscivores | This group, which favours expanses of open, deep water, essentially comprises the cormorants, although the African Darter will also enter estuaries when and where these are dominated by freshwater conditions, as well as the pelicans (both Great White and Pink-backed pelicans). The two most common cormorants are the White-breasted and Reed cormorants, although small numbers of Cape Cormorants will also seasonally enter some systems during the winter-spring period. The very shallow nature of Mvoti Estuary offers little suitable habitat for this guild. The primary aerial piscivores (species hunting from the wing, or elevated perches, over open water) |
| Aerial piscivores | in estuaries are terns (primarily Caspian, Swift, Lesser Crested, Sandwich, Common and Little terns), aquatic raptors (African Fish Eagle and Osprey) and kingfishers (mainly Pied, Giant and Malachite kingfishers). The fact that many terns often use open sandbanks in estuaries for roosting rather than foraging is particularly relevant in the case of Mvoti Estuary, which once hosted a major tern roost in such circumstances. |
| Large wading piscivores | The primary large wading piscivores are the herons and egrets (especially Goliath, Grey, Purple and Black-crowned Night herons and Little Egret). These species are characteristic of wetland shorelines and their ability to extend their hunting range into inundated areas depends primarily on their size/leg-length. Storks (essentially the Woolly-necked Stork in this region) and African Spoonbill are additional large wading piscivores. Salinity militates against the abundance of amphibians (frogs) and hence the large wading predatory waterbirds that tend to specialise on these animals, e.g. Hamerkop and Yellow-billed Egret. |
| Small wading invertebrate feeders | The main groups here are the shorebirds (e.g. sandpipers, plovers, stints, thick-knees, etc.), i.e. the migratory Palaearctic waders and their resident counterparts. These species feed on benthic macroinvertebrates. Like the large wading piscivores, many of these species are characteristic of wetland shorelines but many also exploit inter-tidal sand- and mud-flats. Indeed these inter-tidal areas are often the most important habitat for many of the Palaearctic waders and some a wholly reliant on these habitats on their non-breeding grounds. A large diversity of species characterises this group, e.g. sandpipers, plovers, lapwings, stilts, oystercatchers and thick-knees. Ibises, essentially African Sacred and Hadeda ibises, are likely also best placed in this group despite their size, although both species likely obtain the bulk of their food outside estuaries, indeed wetlands generally, as in the case of the Egyptian Goose (see below). |
| Swimming herbivorous waterfowl | Salinity also militates against the growth of higher vegetation in most estuaries (although this does not apply to much of the broader Mvoti Estuary area), limiting the food supply for herbivorous waterfowl (ducks and geese) in many instances. It also severely curtails the abundance of the otherwise ubiquitous Red-knobbed Coot, and some other rallids, in these habitats. Waterfowl, however, do occur when and where estuaries are dominated by freshwater conditions, e.g. African Black Ducks – river specialists, typically occur in the upper reaches of estuaries where rivers enter these systems. Some waterfowl, however, feed on a mixture of plant material and invertebrate food such as small crustaceans These birds, like terns, are also attracted to roost at estuaries. The Egyptian Goose is a particularly abundant, and increasing, estuarine waterfowl but it likely obtains most of its food in surrounding dryland habitats, e.g. lawns, pastures and cropfields. The same applies to the Spur-winged Goose. Mvoti Estuary is characterised by extensive encroachment by aquatic vegetation. |

 Table 4.34
 Waterbird feeding guilds and their defining features and typical/dominant species.

| | Gulls, primarily the Kelp and Grey-headed gulls along the KZN coastline, have an unparalleled |
|------------------|---|
| Carnivorous and | dietary breadth as carnivores, feeding on both vertebrate and invertebrate matter both live and dead |
| scavenging gulls | (scavenged). Their breadth of foraging strategies is equally broad. Gulls, like terns, often also use |
| | estuaries as roosting sites, coming in from the nearby coastline for this purpose. |

ii) Description of factors influencing birds

Table 4.36 and Table 4.37 lists the expected effects of various abiotic and biotic factors on the different waterbird feeding guilds present at Mhlali Estuary.

Table 4.35Effect of abiotic characteristics and processes, as well as other biotic components
(variables) on various groupings (generalist gulls excluded from consideration due to
their overall resilience, unpredictability and adaptability)

| | | | Grouping | - |
|---|---|---|--|---|
| Variable | Swimming & large wading piscivores | Aerial piscivores | Swimming herbivorous waterfowl | Small wading invertebrate feeders |
| Mouth condition | Indirectly, through influence on water level and fish | | Indirectly, through influence on macrophytes | Mouth closures has negative effect on preferred inter- tidal sandbanks in lower estuary. Also affects roosting terns and waterfowl |
| Salinity | Indirectly, through influence on fish | | Prefer lower salinities | Some Palaearctic waders reliant on seawater conditions |
| Turbidity | Negatively affects visibility for for foraging | | Negatively affects submerged aquatic plants | Only if impacts benthic macroinvertebrates |
| Intertidal area | Indirectly, through influence on fish | Indirectly, through influence on fish. Shallow water at high tide likely valuable as foraging area | Only important for this group if exposes submerged food plants, e.g. Zostera, at low tide. Roosting habitat also exposed at low tide | Critically important habitat for waders which rely mostly on intertidal areas for feeding |
| Sediment characteristics (including sedimentation) | Indirectly, throu | gh influence on fish | Can enhance macrophyte growth, e.g. reeds | Most waders prefer medium to fine sand; a few prefer coarse sand and mud. Sedimentation can smother benthic macroinvertebrates |
| Primary productivity | Indirectly thoug | h influence on food s | upply | |
| Submerged macrophytes abundance | Indirectly, through influence on fish (food and cover) | | Has positive influence on herbivorous waterfowl numbers | Indirectly, if affects benthic macroinvertebrates |
| Abundance of reeds and sedges | Indirectly, through influence on fish (food and cover) Encroaches on roosting habitat of terns | | Has positive influence on some herbivorous waterfowl species | Encroachment of macrophytes largely at expense of open habitats required by waders |
| Abundance of zooplankton | Indirectly, throu | gh influence on fish | Assumed positive for some omnivorous species | |
| Benthic invertebrate abundance | Indirectly, throu | gh influence on fish | | Primary food source for |

| | | invertebrate- feeding waders |
|--------------|--|---|
| Fish biomass | Piscivores will increase with increasing numbers of small to medium-sized fish | Indirectly, if fish compete for benthic macroinvertebrates |

Table 4.36 Summary of bird responses to different abiotic states

| State | Response |
|--|--|
| State 1: Closed | The deep water conditions of a closed-mouth state increase habitat for swimming piscivores and, possibly, aerial piscivores. Where this results in back-flooding into the floodplain, it can also increase habitat for wading piscivores and herbivorous waterfowl, indeed for waterbirds generally. The lack of tidal conditions though results in reduced habitat for many key small invertebrate-feeding waders, and likely also reduces potentially suitable exposed sandbanks for roosting terns and gulls. |
| State 2: Tidal, intermittently closed | A condition intermittent between that described directly above and below. |
| State 3: Tidal | Where this is associated with extensive inter-tidal sand flats and mudflats, it can provide key habitat for key small invertebrate-feeding waders. Exposed sandflats and mudflats are also suitable for roosting terns and gulls. |
| State 4: Freshwater dominated | Probably the least productive scenario from a waterbird perspective under normal circumstances. |

iii) Reference condition

Key threats operating to shift the estuary away from its reference condition include: extensive sugar-cane planting in the catchment and floodplain, siltation, water abstraction and other flow-related factors, water pollution including eutrophication and inflows from waste-water treatment plants, the spread of both alien and indigenous (reedbeds) aquatic vegetation and human disturbance (Table 4.38).

| Table 4.37 Summary of relative changes from Reference Condition to Present st |
|---|
|---|

| Key drivers | Change |
|---|---|
| | Direct loss of estuarine habitat. |
| Sugar-cane planting in floodplain and catchment | Increased siltation and turbidity of estuary. Directly effects visual |
| | predatory piscivores. |
| Water abstraction | Reduced flow with profound impact on estuarine ecology, |
| | especially for deeper-water species such as swimming piscivores. |
| Water pollution, including eutrophication and | Eutrophication promotes encroachment of macrophytes in the |
| inflow from waste-water treatment works | estuary. |
| Macrophyte encroachment at cost of exposed | Loss of babitat to waterbirds requiring open wetland conditions |
| sandflats in main river channel | Loss of habitat to waterbirds requiring open wetland conditions. |
| Human disturbance at the mouth | Negatively impacts roosting terns and gulls. |
| TOTAL CHANGE | 60% |

4.9.2 Bird health

The Present Ecological State of the Mhlali bird assemblage is described and scored in Table 4.39 below. About 80% of the impact on fish was thought to be non-flow related.

| Variable | Summary of change | Score | Conf |
|-------------------------------|--|-------|------|
| 1. Species richness | Some key species likely no longer present at the estuary or now only rare visitors. | 70 | L |
| 2. Abundance | Likely an overall decrease in waterbird numbers. | 50 | L |
| 3. Community composition | Likely loss of some rarer species and increase in hardy generalists, e.g. Blacksmith Lapwing and Egyptian and Spur- winged geese. | 40 | L |
| Biotic component health score | | 40 | L |
| % of impact non-flow related | | 80 | L |
| Adjusted score | | 88 | L |

 Table 4.38
 Bird component health score

5 PRESENT ECOLOGICAL STATUS

5.1 OVERALL ESTUARINE HEALTH INDEX SCORE

The Estuarine Health Index (EHI) scores allocated to the various abiotic and biotic health parameters for the Mhlali Estuary and the overall Present Ecological Status (PES) for the system under the present state are calculated from the overall EHI score (Table 5.1). The EHI score for the Mhlali Estuary in its present state was estimated to be 57 (i.e. 57% similar to natural condition), which translates into a Present Ecological Status (PES) of D (summarised in Table 5.1).

The Mhlali Estuary is in a D Category, which is mostly attributed to the following factors:

- Significant loss of habitat in the Estuary Functional Zone as a result of sugar cane farming;
- Increase nutrient input as a result of WWTW and poor catchments practises, causing excessive growth of reed and aquatic invasive plants in intertidal and subtidal habitats; and
- Artificial breaching of the estuary mouth.

The Mhlali Estuary is on a steep trajectory downwards as significant further deterioration in estuary health is anticipated once the Shakaskraal WWTW runs at full capacity and the Tinley Manor WWTW (planned for 2015) discharges into the estuary. See Chapter 7 for more detail.

| | Estuarine health score | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------------|------|
| Variable | Overall | Excluding flow related pressures | Conf |
| Hydrology | 62 | 62 | L |
| Hydrodynamics and mouth condition | 80 | 80 | L |
| Water quality | 62.2 | 62.2 | L |
| Physical habitat alteration | 60 | 98 | L |
| Habitat health score | 66 | 76 | |
| Microalgae | 50 | 100 | L |
| Macrophytes | 51 | 90 | L |
| Invertebrates | 40 | 88 | L |
| Fish | 60 | 92 | L |
| Birds | 40 | 92 | L |
| Biotic health score | 48 | 92 | |
| ESTUARY HEALTH SCORE | 57 | 84 | |
| PRESENT ECOLOGICAL STATUS (PES) | D | В | |
| OVERALL CONFIDENCE | L | L | |

Table 5.1 Estuarine Health Score (EHI) for the Mhlali Estuary

5.2 RELATIVE CONTRIBUTION OF FLOW AND NON-FLOW RELATED IMPACTS ON HEALTH

Estimates of the contribution of non-flow related impacts on the level of degradation of each component led to an adjusted health score of 84, which would raise the PES to a B Category. This suggests that non-flow related impacts have played a significant role in the degradation of the estuary to a D, but that flow-related impacts are also one of the main causes of its degradation.

The highest priority is to address the quality of influent water. Of the non-flow-related impacts, water quality problem as a result of the high nutrient load associated with the WWTWs and poor catchments practises was found to be the most important factor that influenced the health of the system. The excess nutrients in the inflowing water increased plant growth and loss of open intertidal and riparian habitat (e.g. sand and mudbanks that use to be important bird habitats). A low oxygen event that is associated with high nutrient and organic inputs reduce invertebrate abundance to 40 % of Reference Conditions and prevents the system from functioning as an effective fish nursery. This in turn reducing food availability to birds..

Another key non-flow related pressure was the loss of riparian area due to sugarcane farming in the Estuary Functional Zone, causing a loss the habitat and loss of a buffer area against human disturbance.

5.3 OVERALL CONFIDENCE

Confidence levels were low for most of the abiotic components and biotic components. The overall confidence of the study was LOW (Table 3.36).

6 THE RECOMMENDED ECOLOGICAL CATEGORY

6.1 CONSERVATION IMPORTANCE

The Estuary Importance Score (EIS) takes size, the rarity of the estuary type within its biographical zone, habitat, biodiversity and functional importance of the estuary into account. Biodiversity importance, in turn is based on the assessment of the importance of the estuary for plants, invertebrates, fish and birds, using rarity indices. These importance scores ideally refer to the system in its present state. The scores have been determined for all South African estuaries (DWA 2014), apart from functional importance, which is scored by the specialists in the workshop. The Estuary Importance scores for five components and the importance rating is presented in Tables 6.1 and 6.2, respectively.

| Table 6.1. | Estimation of the functional importance score of the Mhlali Estuary |
|------------|---|
|------------|---|

| Functionality | Score |
|---|-------|
| a. Estuary: Input of detritus and nutrients generated in estuary | 20 |
| b. Nursery function for marine fish & invertabrates | 70 |
| c. Movement corridor for river invertebrates and fish breeding in sea | 20 |
| d. Migrotory stopover for coastal birds | 40 |
| e. Catchment detritus, nutrients and sediments to sea | 20 |
| f. Coastal connectivity (way piont) for fish | 40 |
| Functional importance score - Max (a to e) | |

Historically the Mhlali supported a very good diversity of fish species. This is reduced under present day conditions. Although the Mhlali is a relatively small system located on a section of coast with a relative abundance of estuaries, the nature of the system (bathymetry, mouth dynamics and resulting salinity regimes over different states) renders its nursery potential good. From a functional importance perspective, it can be considered of medium nursery value for estuarine associated fish species in the region.

| Table 6.2 Estuarine Importance score | es for the Mhlali Estuary |
|--|---------------------------|
|--|---------------------------|

| Criterion | Weight | Score |
|-----------------------------------|--------|-------|
| Estuary Size | 15 | 60 |
| Zonal Rarity Type | 10 | 10 |
| Habitat Diversity | 25 | 90 |
| Biodiversity Importance | 25 | 80 |
| Functional Importance | | 70 |
| Weighted Estuary Importance Score | | |

The EIS for the Mvoti Estuary, is therefore estimated to be 63 (Table 6.2), i.e., the estuary is rated as "Important" (Table 6.3).

| Importance score | Description |
|------------------|------------------------------|
| 81 - 100 | Highly important |
| 61 – 80 | Important |
| 0 - 60 | Of low to average importance |

Table 6.3. Estuarine importance scores (EIS) and significance

6.2 RECOMMENDED ECOLOGICAL CATEGORY

The Recommended Ecological Category (REC) represents the level of protection assigned to an estuary. The first step is to determine the 'minimum' Ecological Category based on its PES. The relationship between EHI Score, PES and minimum REC is set out in Table 6.4.

| EHI Score | PES | Description | Minimum Ecological Category |
|-----------|-----|--|--------------------------------|
| 91 – 100 | A | Unmodified, natural | А |
| 76 – 90 | В | Largely natural with few modifications | В |
| 61 – 75 | С | Moderately modified | С |
| 41 – 60 | D | Largely modified | D |
| 21 – 40 | E | Highly degraded | - |
| 0-20 | F | Extremely degraded | - |

 Table 6.4.
 Relationship between the EHI, PES and minimum REC

The PES sets the minimum REC. The degree to which the REC needs to be elevated above the PES depends on the level of importance and level of protection or desired protection of a particular estuary (Table 6.5).

Table 6.5.Estuary protection status and importance, and the basis for assigning a
Recommended Ecological Category

| Protection status and importance | REC | Policy basis | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Protected area | | Protected and desired protected areas should be restored to and maintained in the best possible state of health | | | | | |
| Desired Protected Area | A OF BAS" | | | | | | |
| Highly important | PES + 1, min B | Highly important estuaries should be in an A or B category | | | | | |
| Important | PES + 1, min C | Important estuaries should be in an A, B or C category | | | | | |
| Of low to average importance | PES, min D | Estuaries to remain in a D category | | | | | |

* BAS = Best Attainable State

The PES for the Mhlali Estuary is a D, with a steep downwards trajectory. The Mhlali Estuary is rated as "Important" from a biodiversity perspective and should therefore be in a C Category.

In addition, the system also forms part of the core set of priority estuaries in need of protection to achieve biodiversity targets in the National Estuaries Biodiversity Plan for the National Biodiversity Assessment (Turpie et al.,2013). The NBA 2011 (Van Niekerk and Turpie 2012) recommends that the minimum Category for the Mhlali be a B, that the system be a granted partial no-take protection, and that 50 % of the estuary margin be undeveloped (Table 6.6).

Table 6.6 National Estuary Biodiversity Plan requirements

| Estuary Requirements | Mhlali |
|---|---------|
| Current health category | С |
| National and/or Regional Priority set | SA |
| Recommended extent of protection | Partial |
| Recommended extent of undeveloped margin | 50% |
| Provisional estimate of Recommended Ecological Category | В |

Based on the above and the reversibility of impacts, the Recommended Ecological Category for the Mhlali Estuary is a B Category.

7 CONSEQUENCES OF ALTERNATIVE SCENARIOS

7.1 DESCRIPTION OF SCENARIOS

The proposed scenarios for the Mhlali system are summarised in Table 7.1.

| Table 71 | Summary | of flow | scenarios |
|----------|---------|---------|-----------|
| | Summary | | SCENALIOS |

| Scenarios | Description | MAR (X10 ⁶ m ³) | % Remaining |
|------------|--|--|-------------|
| Reference | Natural Flow | 56.31 | 100 |
| Present | Present day (+WWTW: Shakaskraal (0.8 Ml/d)) | 51.55 | 92 |
| Scenario 1 | Present, with no WWTW | 51.26 | 91 |
| Scenario 2 | Present day (WWTW: Shakaskraal (1.6 Ml/d) + Tinley Manor (6 Ml/d)) | 54.03 | 96 |
| Scenario 3 | Abstraction + WWTW (WWTW: Shakaskraal (1.6 Ml/d) + Tinley Manor (6 Ml/d)) | 46.94 | 83 |
| Scenario 4 | WWTW at full capacity (1.6 Ml/d + 18Ml/d) | 58.41 | 104 |
| Scenario 5 | Present minus WWTW, including remedial actions: rehab of flood plain, removal of old weir, no artificial breaching, no sugar cane farming in the Estuary Functional zone | 51.26 | 91 |

7.2 Variability in river inflow

The occurrences of the flow distributions (mean monthly flows in m^3 /s) under the future Scenarios of the Mhlali Estuary, derived from a 85-year simulated data set, are provided in Table 7.3 to 7.5 and Figure 7.1 to 7.4. The full sets 85-year series of simulated monthly runoff data for the future Scenarios are listed in in Table 7.6 to 7.10.

| %ile | Oct | Nov | Dec | Jan | Feb | Mar | Apr | May | Jun | Jul | Aug | Sep |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|-------|------|------|-------|
| 99.9 | 12.92 | 17.08 | 16.38 | 17.46 | 19.97 | 26.62 | 12.01 | 5.80 | 20.45 | 6.22 | 1.01 | 28.77 |
| 99 | 12.45 | 13.49 | 14.03 | 15.76 | 17.38 | 23.93 | 11.05 | 5.64 | 5.21 | 1.81 | 0.80 | 7.37 |
| 90 | 1.99 | 6.31 | 5.59 | 6.59 | 11.11 | 7.91 | 4.59 | 2.15 | 0.53 | 0.37 | 0.38 | 0.50 |
| 80 | 1.05 | 3.19 | 3.69 | 4.81 | 7.72 | 5.19 | 2.60 | 0.68 | 0.29 | 0.23 | 0.18 | 0.30 |
| 70 | 0.52 | 2.19 | 2.40 | 3.44 | 4.12 | 3.75 | 1.64 | 0.42 | 0.19 | 0.07 | 0.10 | 0.23 |
| 60 | 0.42 | 1.01 | 1.65 | 2.59 | 2.78 | 2.41 | 0.86 | 0.30 | 0.11 | 0.06 | 0.08 | 0.15 |
| 50 | 0.32 | 0.63 | 1.06 | 1.73 | 2.10 | 1.53 | 0.59 | 0.21 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 0.08 |
| 40 | 0.24 | 0.44 | 0.62 | 0.91 | 1.25 | 0.91 | 0.42 | 0.15 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.07 |
| 30 | 0.15 | 0.34 | 0.45 | 0.56 | 0.64 | 0.55 | 0.31 | 0.11 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.05 |
| 20 | 0.08 | 0.24 | 0.33 | 0.39 | 0.50 | 0.33 | 0.21 | 0.08 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.05 |
| 10 | 0.06 | 0.10 | 0.14 | 0.26 | 0.24 | 0.17 | 0.08 | 0.07 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.04 |
| 1 | 0.04 | 0.05 | 0.06 | 0.08 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.03 | 0.03 | 0.03 | 0.03 |
| 0.1 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.05 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.03 | 0.02 | 0.02 | 0.02 | 0.02 |

Table 7.2 Summary of the monthly flow (in m³/s) distribution under Scenario 1 and 5

Table 7.3 Summary of the monthly flow (in m³/s) distribution under Scenario 2

| %ile | Oct | Nov | Dec | Jan | Feb | Mar | Apr | May | Jun | Jul | Aug | Sep |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|-------|------|------|-------|
| 99.9 | 13.01 | 17.17 | 16.47 | 17.55 | 20.06 | 26.71 | 12.10 | 5.88 | 20.53 | 6.30 | 1.09 | 28.86 |
| 99 | 12.54 | 13.58 | 14.12 | 15.84 | 17.47 | 24.02 | 11.14 | 5.72 | 5.30 | 1.89 | 0.88 | 7.45 |
| 90 | 2.08 | 6.40 | 5.68 | 6.68 | 11.20 | 7.99 | 4.68 | 2.23 | 0.62 | 0.46 | 0.46 | 0.58 |
| 80 | 1.14 | 3.28 | 3.77 | 4.90 | 7.81 | 5.28 | 2.69 | 0.76 | 0.38 | 0.32 | 0.26 | 0.39 |
| 70 | 0.60 | 2.28 | 2.48 | 3.53 | 4.21 | 3.84 | 1.73 | 0.51 | 0.28 | 0.16 | 0.19 | 0.32 |

| %ile | Oct | Nov | Dec | Jan | Feb | Mar | Apr | Мау | Jun | Jul | Aug | Sep |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 60 | 0.50 | 1.10 | 1.74 | 2.68 | 2.87 | 2.49 | 0.95 | 0.38 | 0.19 | 0.15 | 0.16 | 0.24 |
| 50 | 0.40 | 0.71 | 1.15 | 1.81 | 2.19 | 1.61 | 0.68 | 0.30 | 0.16 | 0.15 | 0.15 | 0.17 |
| 40 | 0.32 | 0.52 | 0.71 | 1.00 | 1.35 | 1.00 | 0.51 | 0.24 | 0.15 | 0.14 | 0.14 | 0.16 |
| 30 | 0.23 | 0.43 | 0.54 | 0.64 | 0.73 | 0.63 | 0.40 | 0.19 | 0.15 | 0.14 | 0.13 | 0.14 |
| 20 | 0.16 | 0.33 | 0.41 | 0.47 | 0.60 | 0.42 | 0.30 | 0.16 | 0.14 | 0.13 | 0.13 | 0.14 |
| 10 | 0.15 | 0.19 | 0.23 | 0.34 | 0.34 | 0.25 | 0.17 | 0.15 | 0.13 | 0.12 | 0.13 | 0.13 |
| 1 | 0.13 | 0.13 | 0.15 | 0.17 | 0.16 | 0.15 | 0.14 | 0.13 | 0.12 | 0.11 | 0.12 | 0.12 |
| 0.1 | 0.13 | 0.13 | 0.14 | 0.14 | 0.15 | 0.13 | 0.13 | 0.11 | 0.11 | 0.10 | 0.10 | 0.11 |

Table 7.4 Summary of the monthly flow (in m³/s) distribution under Scenario 3

| %ile | Oct | Nov | Dec | Jan | Feb | Mar | Apr | Мау | Jun | Jul | Aug | Sep |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|-------|------|------|-------|
| 99.9 | 12.69 | 16.85 | 16.15 | 17.24 | 19.72 | 26.40 | 11.77 | 5.57 | 20.21 | 5.99 | 0.78 | 28.53 |
| 99 | 12.22 | 13.26 | 13.81 | 15.53 | 17.13 | 23.71 | 10.82 | 5.41 | 4.98 | 1.58 | 0.57 | 7.13 |
| 90 | 1.76 | 6.08 | 5.37 | 6.37 | 10.86 | 7.68 | 4.36 | 1.92 | 0.30 | 0.15 | 0.15 | 0.26 |
| 80 | 0.82 | 2.96 | 3.46 | 4.59 | 7.47 | 4.97 | 2.36 | 0.45 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 70 | 0.29 | 1.96 | 2.17 | 3.21 | 3.87 | 3.53 | 1.40 | 0.20 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 60 | 0.19 | 0.77 | 1.42 | 2.36 | 2.53 | 2.18 | 0.62 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 50 | 0.09 | 0.39 | 0.83 | 1.50 | 1.85 | 1.30 | 0.36 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 40 | 0.09 | 0.20 | 0.40 | 0.68 | 1.00 | 0.69 | 0.19 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 30 | 0.09 | 0.10 | 0.22 | 0.33 | 0.39 | 0.32 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 20 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.10 | 0.16 | 0.25 | 0.10 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 10 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.08 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.07 |
| 1 | 0.03 | 0.01 | 0.05 | 0.03 | 0.06 | 0.08 | 0.02 | 0.02 | 0.01 | 0.01 | 0.06 | 0.00 |
| 0.1 | 0.02 | 0.01 | 0.04 | 0.03 | 0.02 | 0.07 | 0.01 | 0.01 | 0.01 | 0.00 | 0.02 | 0.00 |

Table 7.5 Summary of the monthly flow (in m³/s) distribution under Scenario 4

| %ile | Oct | Nov | Dec | Jan | Feb | Mar | Apr | Мау | Jun | Jul | Aug | Sep |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|-------|------|------|-------|
| 99.9 | 13.15 | 17.31 | 16.60 | 17.69 | 20.21 | 26.85 | 12.24 | 6.02 | 20.68 | 6.44 | 1.23 | 29.00 |
| 99 | 12.67 | 13.73 | 14.26 | 15.98 | 17.62 | 24.16 | 11.29 | 5.86 | 5.45 | 2.03 | 1.02 | 7.60 |
| 90 | 2.21 | 6.54 | 5.82 | 6.82 | 11.36 | 8.13 | 4.82 | 2.37 | 0.76 | 0.60 | 0.60 | 0.73 |
| 80 | 1.27 | 3.42 | 3.91 | 5.04 | 7.96 | 5.42 | 2.83 | 0.90 | 0.52 | 0.45 | 0.40 | 0.53 |
| 70 | 0.74 | 2.42 | 2.62 | 3.66 | 4.36 | 3.98 | 1.87 | 0.65 | 0.42 | 0.30 | 0.33 | 0.47 |
| 60 | 0.64 | 1.24 | 1.87 | 2.82 | 3.02 | 2.63 | 1.09 | 0.52 | 0.34 | 0.29 | 0.30 | 0.39 |
| 50 | 0.54 | 0.86 | 1.28 | 1.95 | 2.34 | 1.75 | 0.82 | 0.44 | 0.30 | 0.28 | 0.28 | 0.32 |
| 40 | 0.46 | 0.67 | 0.85 | 1.13 | 1.50 | 1.14 | 0.65 | 0.37 | 0.30 | 0.28 | 0.28 | 0.30 |
| 30 | 0.37 | 0.57 | 0.68 | 0.78 | 0.88 | 0.77 | 0.55 | 0.33 | 0.29 | 0.28 | 0.27 | 0.29 |
| 20 | 0.30 | 0.47 | 0.55 | 0.61 | 0.75 | 0.56 | 0.44 | 0.30 | 0.29 | 0.27 | 0.27 | 0.28 |
| 10 | 0.29 | 0.34 | 0.37 | 0.48 | 0.49 | 0.39 | 0.32 | 0.29 | 0.28 | 0.26 | 0.27 | 0.27 |
| 1 | 0.27 | 0.28 | 0.29 | 0.31 | 0.31 | 0.28 | 0.28 | 0.27 | 0.26 | 0.25 | 0.25 | 0.27 |
| 0.1 | 0.27 | 0.27 | 0.28 | 0.28 | 0.30 | 0.27 | 0.27 | 0.25 | 0.25 | 0.24 | 0.24 | 0.25 |



Figure 7.1 Graphic presentation of the occurrence of the various abiotic states under the Scenario 1 and 5



Figure 7.2 Graphic presentation of the occurrence of the various abiotic states under Scenario 2



Figure 7.3 Graphic presentation of the occurrence of the various abiotic states under Scenario 3



Figure 7.4 Graphic presentation of the occurrence of the various abiotic states under Scenario 4

| Year | Oct | Nov | Dec | Jan | Feb | Mar | Apr 0.38 | Mav | Jun | Jul | | Sep |
|-----------------------------|-------|-------|----------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1920 | 0.52 | 17.48 | 12.96 | 2.48 | 0.35 | 0.35 | 0.20 | 0.38 | 0.31 | 0.03 | 0.05 | 0.04 |
| 1922 | 5.70 | 6.04 | 1.31 | 4.39 | 3.22 | 0.98 | 0.41 | 0.08 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.04 |
| 1923 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 1.69 | 2.74 | 1.52 | 26.92 | 9.34 | 0.07 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.03 | 0.17 |
| 1925 | 0.49 | 0.34 | 0.22 | 0.10 | 0.19 | 0.54 | 0.25 | 0.07 | 0.08 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.04 |
| 1926 | 0.27 | 0.38 | 0.27 | 0.21 | 2.70 | 16.66 | 5.44 | 0.09 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.05 | 0.05 |
| 1927 | 0.06 | 0.08 | 0.31 | 0.63 | 0.62 | 8.06 | 2.88 | 0.13 | 0.48 | 0.03 | 0.03 | 1.46 |
| 1929 | 4.31 | 2.09 | 0.44 | 1.16 | 0.54 | 0.44 | 0.39 | 0.13 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 0.19 | 0.44 |
| 1930 1931 | 0.46 | 0.48 | 0.55 | 3.30 | 1.22 | 0.34 | 0.28 | 0.07 | 0.05 | 0.16 | 0.08 | 0.06 |
| 1932 | 0.18 | 0.34 | 0.51 | 0.44 | 0.23 | 0.16 | 0.13 | 0.07 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.04 |
| 1933 | 0.04 | 0.41 | 3.17 | 6.03 | 2.32 | 2.03 | 3.11 | 1.36 | 0.31 | 0.31 | 0.32 | 0.11 |
| 1934 | 0.08 | 0.07 | 0.43 | 0.40 | 7.66 | 6.16 | 1.49 | 3.85 | 1.52 | 0.09 | 0.42 | 0.05 |
| 1936 | 0.16 | 11.35 | 3.67 | 0.25 | 2.29 | 0.84 | 0.56 | 0.16 | 0.14 | 0.06 | 0.09 | 0.07 |
| 1937 1938 | 0.07 | 0.14 | 6.49 1.83 | 3.11 | 8.57 8.17 | <u>2.35</u> 6.13 | 0.50 1.54 | 0.21 | 0.27 | 0.46 | 0.24 | 0.08 |
| 1939 | 0.70 | 3.87 | 3.58 | 1.06 | 0.34 | 0.20 | 0.15 | 3.00 | 1.71 | 0.33 | 0.07 | 0.07 |
| 1940 | 0.15 | 6.02 | 4.03 | 0.91 | 0.14 | 0.31 | 0.83 | 0.31 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.04 | 0.08 |
| 1941 | 0.12 | 7.03 | 11.97 | 2.55 | 3.90 | 4.87 5.06 | 7.71 | 2.63 | 0.19 | 0.07 | 1.03 | 0.27 |
| 1943 | 5.87 | 6.93 | 1.92 | 0.26 | 0.67 | 4.77 | 1.90 | 0.15 | 0.17 | 0.07 | 0.07 | 0.47 |
| 1944 | 1.15 | 0.88 | 0.29 | 0.21 | 3.29 | 12.12 | 3.90 | 0.27 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.04 | 0.04 |
| 1946 | 0.06 | 0.31 | 0.59 | 1.73 | 11.27 | 3.66 | 1.55 | 0.52 | 0.39 | 0.05 | 0.09 | 0.04 |
| 1947 | 0.09 | 2.59 | 1.25 | 2.84 | 4.57 | 4.07 | 3.35 | 0.84 | 0.07 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.04 |
| 1948 | 0.37 | 4.91 | 7.22 | 2.52 | <u>3.63</u> 0.70 | 0.61 | 0.75 | 0.32 | 0.08 | 0.06 | 0.04 | 0.05 |
| 1950 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.86 | 0.81 | 0.53 | 2.99 | 1.21 | 0.11 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.29 | 0.62 |
| 1951 | 0.67 | 0.34 | 2.70 | 6.18 | 2.10 | 0.36 | 0.72 | 0.69 | 0.29 | 0.08 | 0.07 | 0.06 |
| 1953 | 0.26 | 0.59 | 3.86 | 1.70 | 2.63 | 1.24 | 0.27 | 0.21 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.36 |
| 1954 | 12.97 | 6.64 | 0.87 | 6.00 | 2.38 | 4.43 | 2.06 | 0.37 | 0.11 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.13 |
| 1955 1956 | 0.32 | 0.95 | <u>0.62</u> 13.54 | <u>0.13</u> 4.78 | <u>4.50</u> 2.83 | 8.05 2.00 | <u>2.67</u> 9.88 | 0.27 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.10 | 0.28 |
| 1957 | 1.75 | 3.04 | 1.65 | 9.91 | 13.84 | 3.51 | 6.36 | 2.15 | 0.10 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.26 |
| 1958 | 0.21 | 1.00 | 1.65 | 0.85 | 0.63 | 0.18 | 0.08 | 0.47 | 0.25 | 0.07 | 0.11 | 0.17 |
| 1959 | 0.14 | 2.25 | 6.78 | 4.26 | 1.17 | 0.58 | 10.85 | 3.59 | 0.54 | 0.03 | 0.04 | 0.23 |
| 1961 | 0.41 | 0.57 | 0.33 | 0.46 | 0.50 | 1.00 | 0.57 | 0.14 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.07 | 0.06 |
| 1962 1963 | 0.10 | 6.49 | 2.29 | <u>6.87</u> 9.38 | 2.74 | 4.20 | 0.32 | 0.15 | 0.24 | 0.45 | 0.21 | 0.08 |
| 1964 | 0.32 | 0.43 | 0.49 | 0.48 | 0.33 | 0.09 | 0.05 | 0.07 | 0.40 | 0.36 | 0.40 | 0.40 |
| 1965 | 0.45 | 0.68 | 0.65 | 2.26 | 1.09 | 0.12 | 0.07 | 0.24 | 0.12 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.05 |
| 1960 | 0.07 | 1.99 | 0.55 | 5.80 | 2.42 | 0.60 | 0.35 | 0.34 | 0.07 | 0.00 | 0.04 | 0.04 |
| 1968 | 0.31 | 0.36 | 0.41 | 0.29 | 0.52 | 9.34 | 3.49 | 0.80 | 0.38 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.08 |
| 1969 1970 | 2.30 | 3.79 | 2.42 | <u>0.97</u> 2.66 | 0.34 5.04 | 0.10 | 2.43 | 0.17 | 0.13 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 0.29 |
| 1971 | 0.41 | 0.29 | 1.90 | 0.83 | 6.23 | 2.06 | 0.43 | 0.67 | 0.51 | 0.24 | 0.08 | 0.07 |
| 1972 | 0.07 | 0.21 | 0.36 | 0.89 | 1.00 | 0.73 | 0.48 | 0.12 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.18 | 2.15 |
| 1973 | 0.05 | 0.14 | 1.06 | 8.89 | <u>9.01</u> 7.51 | 1.44 | 0.39 | 0.40 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.00 | 0.03 |
| 1975 | 0.50 | 0.54 | 3.47 | 7.88 | 7.94 | 19.95 | 12.11 | 2.14 | 0.10 | 0.09 | 0.12 | 0.15 |
| 1976 1977 | 0.52 | 0.72 | 0.62 | 4.34 5.60 | 14.50 | 5.00 3.78 | 0.61 | 0.09 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.30 |
| 1978 | 2.15 | 8.11 | 2.72 | 0.60 | 0.60 | 0.35 | 0.15 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.06 | 0.11 |
| 1979 | 0.46 | 0.30 | 0.33 | 0.36 | 0.20 | 0.09 | 0.06 | 0.04 | 0.03 | 0.03 | 0.03 | 2.84 |
| <u>1980</u> <u>19</u> 81 | 1.05 | 4.07 | 1.33 | <u>2.34</u> | <u>4.37</u> <u>1.13</u> | 0.90 | 0.14 | 0.47 | 0.20 | 0.07 | 0.47 | 0.04 |
| 1982 | 0.29 | 0.43 | 0.39 | 0.39 | 0.26 | 0.18 | 0.08 | 0.06 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.10 | 0.07 |
| 1983 1984 | 0.25 | 0.44 | <u>5.43</u> 0.20 | 15.40 3.45 | 16.83 20.26 | 7.49 5.71 | 0.09 | 1.56 | 0.25 | 0.53 | 0.56 | 0.25 |
| 1985 | 4.72 | 2.20 | 1.19 | 4.43 | 1.83 | 1.61 | 0.92 | 0.15 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.05 | 0.05 |
| 1986 | 0.07 | 0.23 | 1.74 | 4.02 | 1.81 | 4.32 | 1.66 | 0.58 | 0.74 | 0.27 | 0.35 | 31.15 |
| 1987 | 0.32 | 0.63 | 4.36 | 1.63 | 10.11 | 3.21 | 0.38 | 0.18 | 0.07 | 0.25 | 0.05 | 0.05 |
| 1989 | 0.13 | 12.74 | 4.40 | 0.58 | 0.66 | 7.69 | 2.91 | 0.21 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.12 | 0.08 |
| 1990 1991 | 0.43 | 0.46 | 3.76 0.94 | 2.23 | 8.82 0.22 | 9.44 | 2.39 | 0.22 | 0.12 | 0.07 | 0.07 | 0.31 |
| 1992 | 0.05 | 0.14 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.23 | 0.22 | 0.22 | 0.07 | 0.04 | 0.03 | 0.04 | 0.14 |
| 1993 | 1.75 | 1.03 | 6.82 | 3.24 | 0.53 | 1.53 | 0.59 | 0.08 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.08 | 0.06 |
| 1994 | 0.37 | 1.35 | 16.64 | 13.62 | 9.55 | 2.42 | 0.45 | 0.10 | 0.84 | 0.53 | 0.07 | 0.05 |
| 1996 | 0.34 | 0.39 | 0.21 | 5.26 | 3.19 | 0.71 | 0.74 | 0.35 | 0.29 | 0.34 | 0.16 | 0.17 |
| 1997 1998 | 1.44 | 10.19 | 0.35 | 0.41 | 4.07 10.55 | <u> </u> | 0.31 | 0.10 | 0.06 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.05 |
| 1999 | 7.03 | 2.57 | 3.93 | 12.73 | 11.61 | 2.71 | 0.66 | 5.51 | 1.98 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.07 |
| 2000 | 0.28 | 2.94 | 5.70 | 1.84 | 0.32 | 0.15 | 0.39 | 0.16 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.19 |
| 2007 | 0.08 | 0.08 | 0.09 | 0.10 | 0.08 | 0.33 | 0.42 | 0.12 | 0.08 | 0.39 | 0.75 | 0.46 |
| 2003 | 0.15 | 0.19 | 0.09 | 0.31 | 0.50 | 0.30 | 0.09 | 0.05 | 0.03 | 0.03 | 0.03 | 0.04 |
| 2004 | 0.05 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.03 | 0.02 | 0.01 | 0.01 | 0.02 |

| Table 7.6 | Simulated monthly flows (in m | ∛s) to the Mhlali Estuary | for Scenario 1 and 5 |
|-----------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|
|-----------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|
| Year | Oct | Nov | Dec | Jan 1.02 | Feb | Mar | | May | Jun | Jul | Aug | Sep |
|---------------------|-------|----------|-------------|---------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------|------|-------|------|------|------|
| 1920 | 0.60 | 17.57 | 13.05 | 2.57 | 0.45 | 0.44 | 0.29 | 0.46 | 0.40 | 0.12 | 0.12 | 0.13 |
| 1922 | 5.79 | 6.13 | 1.39 | 4.48 | 3.31 | 1.07 | 0.50 | 0.17 | 0.14 | 0.13 | 0.13 | 0.13 |
| 1923 | 0.13 | 0.13 | 0.25 | 2.92 | 1.61 | 0.59 | 0.24 | 0.15 | 0.14 | 0.12 | 0.12 | 0.25 |
| 1924 | 0.57 | 0.72 | 0.30 | 0.19 | 0.29 | 0.62 | 0.34 | 0.36 | 0.13 | 0.14 | 0.14 | 0.32 |
| 1926 | 0.35 | 0.47 | 0.35 | 0.30 | 2.79 | 16.74 | 5.53 | 0.18 | 0.14 | 0.13 | 0.14 | 0.14 |
| 1927 | 0.15 | 0.17 | 0.40 | 2.37 | 1.53 | 0.61 | 0.35 | 0.16 | 0.13 | 0.12 | 0.12 | 0.13 |
| 1928 1929 | 0.15 | <u> </u> | 0.49 | 0.72 | 0.72 | 8.15 | 2.97 | 0.22 | 0.57 | 0.96 | 0.52 | 1.55 |
| 1930 | 0.55 | 0.57 | 0.64 | 3.39 | 1.31 | 0.43 | 0.37 | 0.16 | 0.14 | 0.25 | 0.16 | 0.15 |
| 1931 | 0.15 | 0.15 | 0.19 | 0.59 | 11.90 | 7.30 | 1.59 | 0.50 | 0.19 | 0.14 | 0.13 | 0.13 |
| 1932 | 0.27 | 0.42 | 0.60 | 0.52 | 0.32 | 0.25 | 0.22 | 0.15 | 0.14 | 0.13 | 0.13 | 0.13 |
| 1933 | 0.13 | 0.49 | 0.52 | 3.35 | 4.22 | 2.12 | 0.74 | 5.90 | 22.23 | 6.79 | 0.47 | 0.20 |
| 1935 | 0.18 | 0.17 | 0.18 | 0.49 | 7.76 | 6.25 | 1.58 | 3.93 | 1.60 | 0.18 | 0.15 | 0.14 |
| 1936 | 0.25 | 11.44 | 3.75 | 0.34 | 2.38 | 0.92 | 0.64 | 0.24 | 0.23 | 0.15 | 0.18 | 0.16 |
| 1937 | 0.16 | 1.84 | 0.58 | 3.20 | 8.26 | 6.22 | 1.62 | 0.30 | 0.30 | 0.34 | 0.33 | 0.17 |
| 1939 | 0.79 | 3.95 | 3.67 | 1.15 | 0.43 | 0.28 | 0.24 | 3.08 | 1.80 | 0.42 | 0.16 | 0.16 |
| 1940 | 0.23 | 6.11 | 4.12 | 0.99 | 0.23 | 0.39 | 0.92 | 0.40 | 0.15 | 0.14 | 0.13 | 0.17 |
| 1941 1942 | 0.20 | 0.40 | 0.21 | 2.63 | 1.37 4.00 | 4.89 | <u> </u> | 0.51 | 0.28 | 0.15 | 0.24 | 0.36 |
| 1943 | 5.96 | 7.02 | 2.00 | 0.34 | 0.76 | 4.86 | 1.99 | 0.24 | 0.25 | 0.15 | 0.15 | 0.56 |
| 1944 | 1.23 | 0.96 | 0.37 | 0.29 | 3.39 | 12.21 | 3.99 | 0.35 | 0.16 | 0.15 | 0.13 | 0.13 |
| 1945 | 0.14 | 0.15 | 0.15 | 0.45 | 0.64 | 1.64 | 1.59 | 0.57 | 0.16 | 0.14 | 0.13 | 0.13 |
| 1940 | 0.14 | 2.68 | 1.34 | 2.93 | 4.66 | <u>3.74</u> 4.15 | 3.44 | 0.07 | 0.48 | 0.25 | 0.18 | 0.17 |
| 1948 | 0.46 | 1.88 | 0.99 | 0.60 | 3.73 | 1.37 | 0.84 | 0.41 | 0.17 | 0.15 | 0.13 | 0.14 |
| 1949 | 0.50 | 5.00 | 7.30 | 2.61 | 0.79 | 0.70 | 0.40 | 0.34 | 0.16 | 0.14 | 0.14 | 0.14 |
| <u>1950</u> 1951 | 0.14 | 0.14 | 0.94 | 0.90 | 0.62 | 3.08 | 1.30 | 0.19 | 0.14 | 0.14 | 0.38 | 0.71 |
| 1952 | 0.15 | 0.43 | 0.97 | 17.74 | 13.92 | 2.48 | 0.30 | 0.16 | 0.13 | 0.17 | 0.13 | 0.24 |
| 1953 | 0.35 | 0.68 | 3.94 | 1.78 | 2.73 | 1.32 | 0.48 | 0.30 | 0.16 | 0.15 | 0.14 | 0.45 |
| 1954 | 13.06 | 6.73 | 0.95 | 6.09 | 2.47 | 4.51 | 2.15 | 0.46 | 0.20 | 0.15 | 0.13 | 0.22 |
| 1955 | 0.40 | 0.56 | 13.62 | 4.86 | 4.60 | 2.09 | 2.76 | 3.19 | 0.15 | 0.15 | 0.19 | 0.37 |
| 1957 | 1.83 | 3.13 | 1.73 | 9.99 | 13.94 | 3.60 | 6.45 | 2.24 | 0.19 | 0.15 | 0.14 | 0.35 |
| 1958 | 0.29 | 1.09 | 1.74 | 0.94 | 0.73 | 0.26 | 0.17 | 0.55 | 0.34 | 0.15 | 0.19 | 0.26 |
| 1959 | 0.64 | 0.71 | 0.57 | 0.41 | 0.59 | 1.31 | 0.99 | 0.38 | 0.15 | 0.14 | 0.13 | 0.13 |
| 1961 | 0.22 | 0.66 | 0.42 | 0.54 | 0.60 | 1.08 | 0.66 | 0.23 | 0.03 | 0.13 | 0.16 | 0.32 |
| 1962 | 0.19 | 6.58 | 2.38 | 6.96 | 2.84 | 4.29 | 1.81 | 0.24 | 0.33 | 0.54 | 0.30 | 0.17 |
| 1963 | 0.27 | 0.33 | 0.37 | 9.47 | 3.75 | 0.40 | 0.41 | 0.16 | 0.14 | 0.14 | 0.13 | 0.14 |
| 1964 1965 | 0.40 | 0.52 | 0.57 | 2.34 | <u> </u> | 0.18 | 0.14 | 0.76 | 0.49 | 0.44 | 0.48 | 0.49 |
| 1966 | 0.16 | 0.49 | 0.63 | 5.59 | 4.67 | 6.77 | 2.67 | 0.42 | 0.15 | 0.14 | 0.13 | 0.13 |
| 1967 | 0.22 | 2.08 | 0.84 | 5.88 | 2.51 | 0.68 | 0.44 | 0.16 | 0.14 | 0.13 | 0.24 | 0.33 |
| 1968 | 2 39 | 0.45 | 2.51 | 1.05 | 0.62 | 9.42 | 0.15 | 0.88 | 0.47 | 0.16 | 0.15 | 0.17 |
| 1970 | 1.14 | 1.00 | 3.08 | 2.74 | 5.14 | 7.41 | 2.52 | 5.69 | 2.08 | 0.47 | 0.71 | 0.74 |
| 1971 | 0.49 | 0.38 | 1.99 | 0.92 | 6.33 | 2.15 | 0.52 | 0.76 | 0.60 | 0.32 | 0.16 | 0.15 |
| <u>1972</u> 1073 | 0.15 | 0.30 | 0.45 | 0.98 | 1.09 | 0.81 | 0.57 | 0.21 | 0.14 | 0.13 | 0.26 | 2.23 |
| 1973 | 0.13 | 0.22 | 1.15 | 8.98 | <u>9.10</u> 7.61 | 1.52 | 0.36 | 0.19 | 0.27 | 0.13 | 0.14 | 0.46 |
| 1975 | 0.58 | 0.63 | 3.56 | 7.96 | 8.03 | 20.03 | 12.20 | 2.23 | 0.19 | 0.18 | 0.21 | 0.24 |
| 1976 | 1.31 | 1.11 | 0.71 | 4.42 | 14.59 | 5.08 | 0.69 | 0.18 | 0.15 | 0.15 | 0.14 | 0.39 |
| 1977 | 2.24 | 8.20 | 2.80 | 0.69 | 2.60 | 0.44 | 0.24 | 0.39 | 0.15 | 0.15 | 0.15 | 0.23 |
| 1979 | 0.55 | 0.39 | 0.42 | 0.45 | 0.29 | 0.17 | 0.15 | 0.13 | 0.12 | 0.12 | 0.12 | 2.92 |
| 1980 | 1.31 | 2.27 | 1.16 | 5.06 | 4.47 | 1.05 | 0.22 | 0.56 | 0.35 | 0.15 | 0.56 | 1.66 |
| 1981 1982 | 1.14 | 4.16 | 1.42 | 2.42 | 1.23 | 0.75 | 0.64 | 0.28 | 0.15 | 0.13 | 0.13 | 0.13 |
| <u>19</u> 83 | 0.34 | 5.66 | <u>5.51</u> | <u>15.</u> 48 | <u>16.92</u> | 7.58 | <u>5</u> .14 | 1.65 | 0.34 | 0.61 | 0.64 | 0.13 |
| 1984 | 0.51 | 0.53 | 0.29 | 3.53 | 20.35 | 5.80 | 0.18 | 0.14 | 0.14 | 0.13 | 0.13 | 0.13 |
| 1985 | 4.81 | 2.28 | 1.27 | 4.52 | 1.93 | 1.70 | 1.01 | 0.24 | 0.15 | 0.14 | 0.13 | 0.14 |
| 1987 | 12.44 | 4.59 | 1.72 | 0.47 | 16.20 | 23.45 | 6.47 | 1.98 | 1.08 | 0.33 | 0.43 | 0.24 |
| 1988 | 0.41 | 0.71 | 4.44 | 1.72 | 10.96 | 3.30 | 0.51 | 0.27 | 0.15 | 0.15 | 0.14 | 0.14 |
| 1989 | 0.22 | 12.82 | 4.48 | 0.67 | 0.76 | 7.78 | 3.00 | 0.29 | 0.15 | 0.14 | 0.21 | 0.17 |
| 1990 | 0.52 | 0.55 | 3.85 | 0.44 | 0.32 | 9.52 | 2.48 | 0.31 | 0.21 | 0.16 | 0.15 | 0.40 |
| 1992 | 0.14 | 0.23 | 0.18 | 0.18 | 0.32 | 0.31 | 0.31 | 0.16 | 0.13 | 0.12 | 0.12 | 0.23 |
| 1993 | 1.84 | 1.12 | 6.90 | 3.33 | 0.62 | 1.61 | 0.68 | 0.16 | 0.14 | 0.13 | 0.17 | 0.15 |
| 1994 | 0.46 | 0.37 | 0.19 | 0.18 | 0.16 | 0.42 | 3.32 | 1.69 | 0.93 | 0.40 | 0.16 | 0.14 |
| 1995 | 0.29 | 0.47 | 0.29 | 5.34 | 3.28 | 0.80 | 0.83 | 0.19 | 0.13 | 0.02 | 0.49 | 0.25 |
| 1997 | 1.52 | 10.28 | 3.65 | 0.49 | 4.17 | 1.46 | 0.40 | 0.19 | 0.15 | 0.13 | 0.13 | 0.14 |
| 1998 | 0.15 | 0.25 | 0.44 | 0.63 | 10.64 | 3.33 | 0.30 | 0.16 | 0.22 | 0.15 | 0.28 | 0.40 |
| 2000 | 0.37 | 2.05 | 4.02 | 1.82 | 0.41 | 0.23 | 0.75 | 0.24 | 0.15 | 0.16 | 0.15 | 0.15 |
| 2001 | 0.74 | 3.04 | 3.94 | 4.03 | 1.78 | 0.41 | 0.51 | 0.21 | 0.15 | 0.48 | 0.84 | 0.55 |
| 2002 | 0.27 | 0.17 | 0.17 | 0.18 | 0.18 | 0.15 | 0.15 | 0.13 | 0.13 | 0.12 | 0.12 | 0.18 |
| 2003 | 0.24 | 0.27 | 0.18 | 0.39 | 0.59 | 0.38 | 0.18 | 0.13 | 0.12 | 0.12 | 0.12 | 0.13 |
| 2007 | 0.14 | 0.10 | 0.14 | 0.17 | 0.10 | 0.10 | 0.10 | 0.11 | 0.11 | 0.10 | 0.10 | 0.10 |

| Table 7.7 | Simulated monthly flows | (in m³/s) to the Mhlali Es | stuary for Scenario 2 |
|-----------|-------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|
|-----------|-------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|

| Year | Oct | Nov | Dec | Jan | Feb | Mar | Apr | May | Jun | Jul | Aug | Sep |
|---------------------|-------|-------|---------------------|--------------|-------------|-------|-------|----------|-------|------|------|-------|
| 1920 | 0.39 | 17.16 | 12.65 | 2.17 | 0.01 | 0.46 | 0.00 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1922 | 5.39 | 5.72 | 1.00 | 4.08 | 2.88 | 0.67 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1923 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.71 | 1.18 | 0.19 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| <u>1924</u> 1925 | 0.09 | 0.31 | 1.38 | 2.43 | 1.38 | 26.61 | 9.02 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1926 | 0.09 | 0.02 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 2.36 | 16.35 | 5.12 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1927 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 1.97 | 1.10 | 0.21 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1928 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.10 | 0.32 | 0.28 | 7.75 | 2.56 | 0.09 | 0.16 | 0.56 | 0.13 | 1.14 |
| 1929 | 4.00 | 0.16 | 0.13 | 2.85 | 0.20 | 0.13 | 0.07 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.12 |
| 1931 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.19 | 11.46 | 6.90 | 1.18 | 0.11 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1932 | 0.09 | 0.02 | 0.20 | 0.13 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1933 | 0.09 | 0.08 | 2.86 | 5.72 2.95 | 1.98 | 1.72 | 2.79 | <u> </u> | 21.82 | 0.09 | 0.01 | 0.09 |
| 1935 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.02 | 0.09 | 7.32 | 5.85 | 1.17 | 3.54 | 1.20 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1936 | 0.09 | 11.03 | 3.36 | 0.09 | 1.95 | 0.53 | 0.24 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1937 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 6.18 | 2.80 | 8.23 | 2.04 | 0.18 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.15 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1938 | 0.06 | 3.55 | 327 | 0.60 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 2 69 | 1.39 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.19 |
| 1940 | 0.09 | 5.70 | 3.72 | 0.60 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.51 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1941 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 2.24 | 0.94 | 4.50 | 1.53 | 0.12 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1942 | 0.34 | 6.71 | 11.66 | 3.24 | 3.56 | 4.75 | 7.39 | 2.32 | 0.12 | 0.27 | 0.72 | 0.21 |
| 1943 | 0.84 | 0.56 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 2.95 | 11.81 | 3.58 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1945 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.06 | 0.20 | 1.24 | 1.18 | 0.17 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1946 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.28 | 1.42 | 10.93 | 3.35 | 1.23 | 0.21 | 0.07 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| <u>1947</u> 1048 | 0.09 | 2.27 | 0.94 | 2.54 | 4.23 | 3.76 | 3.03 | 0.53 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1940 | 0.00 | 4.59 | 6.91 | 2.21 | 0.36 | 0.30 | 0.43 | 0.07 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1950 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.55 | 0.50 | 0.19 | 2.68 | 0.89 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.30 |
| 1951 | 0.36 | 0.02 | 2.39 | 5.87 | 1.76 | 0.05 | 0.40 | 0.38 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1952 1953 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.58 | 17.34 | 13.49 | 2.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1954 | 12.66 | 6.32 | 0.56 | 5.69 | 2.04 | 4.12 | 1.74 | 0.06 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1955 | 0.01 | 0.63 | 0.31 | 0.09 | 4.16 | 7.74 | 2.35 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1956 | 0.09 | 0.15 | 13.23 | 4.47 | 2.49 | 1.70 | 9.56 | 2.80 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1957 | 0.09 | 0.68 | 1.34 | 9.60 | 0.29 | 0.09 | 0.04 | 0.16 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1959 | 0.25 | 0.30 | 0.17 | 0.01 | 0.16 | 0.91 | 0.58 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1960 | 0.09 | 1.93 | 6.47 | 3.95 | 0.83 | 0.27 | 10.53 | 3.28 | 0.22 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1961 | 0.10 | 0.25 | 0.02 | 0.15 | 0.16 | 0.69 | 0.25 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1962 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 9.07 | 3.31 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1964 | 0.01 | 0.11 | 0.18 | 0.17 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.08 | 0.05 | 0.09 | 0.08 |
| 1965 | 0.14 | 0.36 | 0.34 | 1.95 | 0.75 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1966 1967 | 0.09 | 0.08 | 0.24 | 5.20 5.49 | 4.23 | 0.37 | 2.26 | 0.03 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1968 | 0.09 | 0.04 | 0.10 | 0.09 | 0.18 | 9.03 | 3.17 | 0.49 | 0.06 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1969 | 1.99 | 3.47 | 2.11 | 0.66 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1970 | 0.74 | 0.59 | 2.68 | 2.35 | 4.70 | 7.02 | 2.11 | 5.29 | 1.67 | 0.07 | 0.32 | 0.33 |
| 1971 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.05 | 0.52 | 0.66 | 0.42 | 0.11 | 0.30 | 0.19 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 1.82 |
| 1973 | 1.43 | 2.63 | 0.88 | 3.11 | 8.67 | 2.48 | 0.27 | 0.17 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1974 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.75 | 8.58 | 7.17 | 1.13 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.05 |
| 1975 | 0.19 | 0.22 | 3.16 | 7.57 | 7.60 | 19.64 | 11.79 | 1.83 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1970 | 0.92 | 0.40 | 0.37 | 5.29 | 2.37 | 3.47 | 1.47 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1978 | 1.84 | 7.79 | 2.41 | 0.29 | 0.26 | 0.04 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1979 | 0.15 | 0.09 | 0.02 | 0.05 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 2.52 |
| 1980 | 0.91 | 3 75 | 1.02 | 2.03 | 4.03 | 0.65 | 0.09 | 0.16 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.16 | 0.09 |
| 1982 | 0.09 | 0.11 | 0.08 | 0.08 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1983 | 0.09 | 5.25 | 5.12 | 15.09 | 16.49 | 7.18 | 4.73 | 1.25 | 0.09 | 0.22 | 0.25 | 0.09 |
| 1984 | 0.11 | 0.12 | 0.09 | 3.14 | 19.92 | 5.40 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1985 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 1.43 | 4.12 | 1.49 | 4.01 | 1.34 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 30.83 |
| 1987 | 12.04 | 4.19 | 1.33 | 0.07 | 15.77 | 23.05 | 6.06 | 1.58 | 0.68 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1988 | 0.01 | 0.30 | 4.05 | 1.32 | 10.53 | 2.90 | 0.10 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1989 | 0.09 | 12.42 | 4.09 | 0.27 | 0.32 | 7.39 | 2.59 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1991 | 0.67 | 2.61 | 0.63 | 0.05 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1992 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1993 | 1.44 | 0.71 | 6.51 | 2.93 | 0.19 | 1.22 | 0.27 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1994 | 0.06 | 1.03 | 16.33 | 13.31 | <u>9</u> 21 | 2.11 | 0.13 | 0.09 | 0.52 | 0.00 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1996 | 0.03 | 0.07 | 0.09 | 4.95 | 2.85 | 0.40 | 0.42 | 0.04 | 0.09 | 0.03 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1997 | 1.13 | 9.87 | 3.26 | 0.10 | 3.73 | 1.06 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 1998 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.04 | 0.24 | 10.21 | 2.94 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 2000 | 0.09 | 2.23 | <u>3.02</u> 5.40 | 1.53 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.34 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 2001 | 0.35 | 2.63 | 3.54 | 3.63 | 1.34 | 0.02 | 0.10 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.08 | 0.44 | 0.14 |
| 2002 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 2003 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.16 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |
| 2004 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.09 |

Table 7.8 Simulated monthly flows (in m³/s) to the Mhlali Estuary for Scenario 3

| Year | Oct | Nov | Dec | Jan | Feb | Mar | Apr | Mav | Jun | Jul | Aua | Sep |
|--------------|-------|--------------|--------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|-------|--------------|------|-------|
| 1920 | 0.92 | 0.90 | 2.04 | 1.15 | 1.88 | 1.02 | 0.61 | 0.36 | 0.29 | 0.26 | 0.26 | 0.27 |
| 1921 | 0.74 | 17.71 | 13.19 | 2.71 | 0.60 | 0.57 | 0.44 | 0.60 | 0.54 | 0.29 | 0.37 | 0.31 |
| 1922 | 5.93 | 6.27 | 1.53 | 4.61 | 3.46 | 1.21 | 0.64 | 0.31 | 0.28 | 0.27 | 0.27 | 0.27 |
| 1923 | 0.27 | 0.27 | 0.39 | 1.24 | 1.77 | 27.15 | 0.38 | 0.29 | 0.28 | 0.20 | 0.20 | 0.40 |
| 1924 | 0.44 | 0.57 | 0.44 | 0.33 | 0.44 | 0.76 | 9.58 | 0.32 | 0.30 | 0.20 | 0.20 | 0.47 |
| 1926 | 0.49 | 0.61 | 0.49 | 0.44 | 2.94 | 16.88 | 5.68 | 0.32 | 0.29 | 0.27 | 0.28 | 0.29 |
| 1927 | 0.29 | 0.31 | 0.53 | 2.51 | 1.68 | 0.75 | 0.49 | 0.29 | 0.27 | 0.26 | 0.26 | 0.27 |
| 1928 | 0.29 | 0.47 | 0.63 | 0.85 | 0.87 | 8.28 | 3.11 | 0.36 | 0.71 | 1.10 | 0.66 | 1.69 |
| 1929 | 4.53 | 2.32 | 0.67 | 1.39 | 0.79 | 0.67 | 0.62 | 0.36 | 0.29 | 0.28 | 0.41 | 0.67 |
| 1930 | 0.68 | 0.71 | 0.78 | 3.52 | 1.46 | 0.57 | 0.51 | 0.30 | 0.28 | 0.39 | 0.30 | 0.29 |
| 1931 | 0.29 | 0.29 | 0.32 | 0.73 | 12.05 | 7.44 | 1.73 | 0.64 | 0.33 | 0.28 | 0.27 | 0.27 |
| 1932 | 0.41 | 0.57 | 0.74 | 0.66 | 0.47 | 0.39 | 0.36 | 0.29 | 0.28 | 0.27 | 0.27 | 0.27 |
| 1933 | 0.27 | 0.04 | 3.39 | 0.20 | 2.30 | 2.20 | 0.88 | 6.04 | 22.37 | 6.03 | 0.55 | 0.34 |
| 1934 | 0.30 | 0.30 | 0.00 | 0.62 | 7.91 | 6.38 | 1 72 | 4.07 | 1 75 | 0.93 | 0.04 | 0.41 |
| 1936 | 0.38 | 11.58 | 3.89 | 0.48 | 2.53 | 1.06 | 0.79 | 0.38 | 0.37 | 0.29 | 0.32 | 0.30 |
| 1937 | 0.29 | 0.37 | 6.72 | 3.33 | 8.82 | 2.58 | 0.73 | 0.44 | 0.50 | 0.68 | 0.47 | 0.31 |
| 1938 | 0.59 | 1.98 | 2.06 | 1.14 | 8.41 | 6.36 | 1.77 | 0.85 | 0.49 | 0.41 | 0.30 | 0.74 |
| 1939 | 0.93 | 4.10 | 3.81 | 1.28 | 0.58 | 0.42 | 0.39 | 3.22 | 1.94 | 0.56 | 0.30 | 0.30 |
| 1940 | 0.37 | 6.25 | 4.26 | 1.13 | 0.39 | 0.53 | 1.06 | 0.53 | 0.30 | 0.28 | 0.27 | 0.32 |
| 1941 | 0.34 | 0.54 | 0.35 | 2.77 | 1.52 | 5.03 | 2.08 | 0.65 | 0.42 | 0.29 | 0.38 | 0.51 |
| 1942 | 0.88 | 7.20 | 12.19 | 3.78 | 4.15 | 5.29 | 7.94 | 2.85 | 0.67 | 0.81 | 1.25 | 0.76 |
| 1943 | 1.37 | 1 1 1 | 0.51 | 0.40 | 3.54 | 12.35 | 4 13 | 0.30 | 0.40 | 0.29 | 0.29 | 0.70 |
| 1945 | 0.28 | 0.29 | 0.29 | 0.59 | 0.79 | 1.77 | 1.73 | 0.71 | 0.30 | 0.28 | 0.27 | 0.27 |
| 1946 | 0.28 | 0.54 | 0.81 | 1.95 | 11.52 | 3.88 | 1.78 | 0.75 | 0.62 | 0.38 | 0.31 | 0.32 |
| 1947 | 0.32 | 2.82 | 1.48 | 3.07 | 4.81 | 4.29 | 3.58 | 1.06 | 0.30 | 0.28 | 0.27 | 0.27 |
| 1948 | 0.60 | 2.02 | 1.13 | 0.74 | 3.88 | 1.51 | 0.98 | 0.55 | 0.31 | 0.29 | 0.27 | 0.29 |
| 1949 | 0.64 | 5.14 | 7.44 | 2.75 | 0.95 | 0.84 | 0.54 | 0.47 | 0.30 | 0.28 | 0.28 | 0.29 |
| 1950 | 0.28 | 0.28 | 1.08 | 1.03 | 0.77 | 3.22 | 1.44 | 0.33 | 0.29 | 0.28 | 0.52 | 0.85 |
| 1951 | 0.89 | 0.57 | 2.92 | 6.40 | 2.34 | 0.59 | 0.95 | 0.92 | 0.52 | 0.31 | 0.29 | 0.29 |
| 1952 | 0.28 | 0.41 | 1.11 | 17.00 | 14.07 | 2.02 | 0.44 | 0.29 | 0.27 | 0.27 | 0.27 | 0.38 |
| 1953 | 13.20 | 6.87 | 4.08 | 6.23 | 2.00 | 4 65 | 2 30 | 0.44 | 0.30 | 0.20 | 0.20 | 0.39 |
| 1955 | 0.54 | 1.18 | 0.85 | 0.35 | 4.75 | 8.27 | 2.91 | 0.49 | 0.30 | 0.28 | 0.32 | 0.51 |
| 1956 | 0.50 | 0.70 | 13.76 | 5.00 | 3.07 | 2.23 | 10.11 | 3.33 | 0.30 | 0.28 | 0.28 | 0.53 |
| 1957 | 1.97 | 3.28 | 1.87 | 10.13 | 14.09 | 3.74 | 6.59 | 2.37 | 0.34 | 0.29 | 0.28 | 0.49 |
| 1958 | 0.43 | 1.23 | 1.88 | 1.08 | 0.88 | 0.40 | 0.31 | 0.69 | 0.48 | 0.29 | 0.33 | 0.41 |
| 1959 | 0.78 | 0.85 | 0.71 | 0.55 | 0.75 | 1.44 | 1.13 | 0.52 | 0.29 | 0.28 | 0.27 | 0.27 |
| 1960 | 0.36 | 2.48 | 7.00 | 4.48 | 1.42 | 0.81 | 11.08 | 3.82 | 0.78 | 0.45 | 0.30 | 0.46 |
| 1961 | 0.64 | 0.81 | 0.56 | 0.68 | 0.75 | 1.22 | 0.80 | 0.37 | 0.29 | 0.27 | 0.30 | 0.29 |
| 1962 | 0.32 | 0.72 | 2.52 | 7.09 | 2.99 | 4.42 | 1.96 | 0.37 | 0.47 | 0.08 | 0.44 | 0.31 |
| 1903 | 0.54 | 0.66 | 0.30 | 0.70 | 0.58 | 0.32 | 0.33 | 0.30 | 0.23 | 0.20 | 0.62 | 0.20 |
| 1965 | 0.68 | 0.91 | 0.87 | 2.48 | 1.33 | 0.34 | 0.30 | 0.46 | 0.35 | 0.28 | 0.28 | 0.29 |
| 1966 | 0.29 | 0.63 | 0.77 | 5.73 | 4.82 | 6.90 | 2.81 | 0.56 | 0.30 | 0.28 | 0.27 | 0.27 |
| 1967 | 0.36 | 2.22 | 0.97 | 6.02 | 2.66 | 0.82 | 0.58 | 0.30 | 0.28 | 0.27 | 0.37 | 0.47 |
| 1968 | 0.53 | 0.59 | 0.63 | 0.52 | 0.77 | 9.56 | 3.72 | 1.02 | 0.61 | 0.29 | 0.29 | 0.31 |
| 1969 | 2.53 | 4.02 | 2.65 | 1.19 | 0.59 | 0.32 | 0.29 | 0.40 | 0.36 | 0.29 | 0.28 | 0.52 |
| 1970 | 1.28 | 1.15 | 3.21 | 2.88 | 5.29 | 7.55 | 2.66 | 5.82 | 2.22 | 0.61 | 0.85 | 0.88 |
| 1971 | 0.03 | 0.52 | 2.13 | 1.00 | 0.48 | 2.28 | 0.66 | 0.90 | 0.74 | 0.40 | 0.30 | 0.30 |
| 1972 | 1.96 | 3.18 | 1 42 | 3.64 | 925 | 3.01 | 0.82 | 0.35 | 0.29 | 0.27 | 0.40 | 0.28 |
| 1974 | 0.27 | 0.37 | 1.28 | 9.12 | 7.76 | 1.66 | 0.50 | 0.33 | 0.29 | 0.27 | 0.27 | 0.61 |
| 1975 | 0.72 | 0.77 | 3.70 | 8.10 | 8.18 | 20.17 | 12.35 | 2.36 | 0.34 | 0.31 | 0.35 | 0.39 |
| 1976 | 1.45 | 1.25 | 0.85 | 4.56 | 14.74 | 5.22 | 0.84 | 0.31 | 0.29 | 0.28 | 0.28 | 0.53 |
| 1977 | 0.74 | 0.95 | 0.81 | 5.83 | 2.95 | 4.00 | 2.02 | 0.53 | 0.30 | 0.28 | 0.28 | 0.37 |
| 1978 | 2.37 | 8.34 | 2.94 | 0.83 | 0.85 | 0.57 | 0.39 | 0.29 | 0.29 | 0.27 | 0.28 | 0.34 |
| 1979 | 0.69 | 0.53 | 0.56 | 0.59 | 0.45 | 0.31 | 0.29 | 0.27 | 0.27 | 0.26 | 0.26 | 3.07 |
| 1980 | 1.45 | Z.42 1 20 | 1.30 | 2.19 | 4.02 | 0.80 | 0.37 | 0.69 | 0.49 | 0.29 | 0.70 | 1.80 |
| 1982 | 0.52 | 4.50 0.66 | 0.62 | 0.61 | 0.51 | 0.09 | 0.76 | 0.42 | 0.29 | 0.27 | 0.33 | 0.27 |
| 1983 | 0.47 | 5.80 | 5.65 | 15.62 | 17.08 | 7.72 | 5.28 | 1.78 | 0.48 | 0.75 | 0.78 | 0.48 |
| 1984 | 0.65 | 0.67 | 0.43 | 3.67 | 20.50 | 5.94 | 0.32 | 0.28 | 0.28 | 0.27 | 0.27 | 0.27 |
| 1985 | 4.95 | 2.43 | 1.41 | 4.66 | 2.08 | 1.84 | 1.15 | 0.37 | 0.29 | 0.28 | 0.27 | 0.28 |
| 1986 | 0.30 | 0.46 | 1.96 | 4.25 | 2.05 | 4.54 | 1.89 | 0.81 | 0.97 | 0.49 | 0.57 | 31.38 |
| 1987 | 12.57 | 4.74 | 1.86 | 0.61 | 16.35 | 23.59 | 6.61 | 2.11 | 1.23 | 0.48 | 0.53 | 0.39 |
| 1988 | 0.55 | 0.86 | 4.58 | 1.86 | 11.12 | 3.44 | 0.66 | 0.40 | 0.30 | 0.28 | 0.28 | 0.28 |
| 1989 | 0.36 | 12.97 | 2.02 | 0.81 | 0.91 | 1.92 | 3.14 | 0.43 | 0.29 | 0.28 | 0.35 | 0.31 |
| 1990 | 1.21 | 3 16 | 5.99 | 0.58 | 9.07 | 9.00 | 0.30 | 0.45 | 0.35 | 0.30 | 0.29 | 0.54 |
| 1997 | 0.28 | 0.37 | 0.32 | 0.31 | 0.47 | 0.32 | 0.30 | 0.27 | 0.27 | 0.20 | 0.20 | 0.27 |
| 1993 | 1.98 | 1.27 | 7.04 | 3.46 | 0.77 | 1.75 | 0.83 | 0.30 | 0.28 | 0.27 | 0.31 | 0.29 |
| <u>19</u> 94 | 0.60 | 0.52 | 0.33 | 0.32 | 0.32 | 0.56 | 3.46 | 1.83 | 1.07 | <u>0.</u> 54 | 0.30 | 0.29 |
| 1995 | 0.43 | 1.58 | 16.86 | 13.84 | 9.80 | 2.65 | 0.68 | 0.32 | 0.29 | 0.75 | 0.63 | 0.39 |
| 1996 | 0.56 | 0.62 | 0.43 | 5.48 | 3.43 | 0.93 | 0.97 | 0.58 | 0.52 | 0.56 | 0.38 | 0.41 |
| 1997 | 1.66 | 10.42 | 3.79 | 0.63 | 4.32 | 1.60 | 0.54 | 0.33 | 0.29 | 0.27 | 0.27 | 0.29 |
| 1998 | 0.29 | 0.39 | 0.57 | 0.77 | 10.79 | 3.47 | 0.44 | 0.29 | 0.36 | 0.29 | 0.42 | 0.54 |
| 1999 | 7.26 | 2.80 | 4.16 | 12.96 | 11.85 | 2.93 | 0.89 | 5.73 | 2.21 | 0.30 | 0.28 | 0.30 |
| 2000 | 0.50 | 3.10 2.10 | 0.93 1 07 | 2.00 | 1.02 | 0.37 | 0.62 | 0.38 | 0.29 | 0.28 | 0.27 | 0.42 |
| 2007 | 0.00 | 0.32 | 0.31 | 0.32 | 0.33 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.33 | 0.29 | 0.02 | 0.30 | 0.09 |
| 2002 | 0.37 | 0.42 | 0.32 | 0.52 | 0.74 | 0.52 | 0.32 | 0.27 | 0.26 | 0.25 | 0.26 | 0.27 |
| 2004 | 0.28 | 0.29 | 0.28 | 0.28 | 0.30 | 0.27 | 0.27 | 0.25 | 0.25 | 0.24 | 0.24 | 0.25 |

Table 7.9 Simulated monthly flows (in m³/s) to the Mhlali Estuary for Scenario 4

7.3 ABIOTIC COMPONENTS

7.3.1 Hydrology

7.3.1.1 Low flows

Table 7. 9 provide a summary of the changes in low flow that have occurred under the different scenarios.

Table 7.10Summary of the change in low flow conditions to the Mhlali Estuary under a
range of flow scenarios

| Percentile | Monthly flow (m ³ /s) | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|---------|-----------|-----|-----|------|--|--|--|--|
| i croentile | Natural | Present | 1 (and 5) | 2 | 3 | 4 | | | | |
| 30%ile | 0.3 | 0.1 | 0.2 | 0.3 | 0.1 | 0.4 | | | | |
| 20%ile | 0.2 | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.2 | 0.1 | 0.3 | | | | |
| 10%ile | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.3 | | | | |
| % Similarity in low flows | | 39.7 | 56.8 | 100 | 45 | 58.1 | | | | |

Confidence: High

7.3.1.2 Flood regime

There are no large dams at present in the Mhlali catchment. Similarly any changes in the flood regime under the future scenarios would be mostly related to smaller farm dams, land-use change and associated catchment permeability. An evaluation of the 95 %ile, 99 %ile and 99.9 %ile show that floods occur relatively untransformed from Reference Condition to Present State and Future Scenario 1 to 4, I.e. less than 5% change from Reference.

Confidence: Medium

A summary of the hydrology scores are provided in Table 7.11.

 Table 7.11
 EHI scores for hydrology under the different scenarios

| Variable | Scenario | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------|----------|-----------|-----|----|----|------|--|--|--|
| Variable | Present | 1 (and 5) | 2 | 3 | 4 | Conf | | | |
| a. Similarity in low flows | 40 | 57 | 100 | 45 | 58 | L | | | |
| b. Similarity floods | 95 | 95 | 95 | 95 | 95 | М | | | |
| Hydrology score | 72 | 97 | 65 | 73 | 72 | L/M | | | |

7.3.2 Hydrodynamics and mouth condition

This section provides a description of the changes in the occurrences of mouth conditions for each of the scenarios.

| Present | Mouth closure (State 1) occurs for about 59 % of the time under the Present State, while the estuary was closed for about 47% of the time under the Reference Condition. |
|--------------------|--|
| Scenario 1 to 1 | Mouth closure would occur for 59%, 54%, 67%, 44% and 59% respectively under Scenarios 1 to 5. |

Table 7.12 provides a summary of the hydrodynamics and mouth condition scores for the Mhlali Estuary..

| Variable | Scenario | | | | | | | | |
|---|----------|----|----|----|----|----|------|--|--|
| Vallable | Present | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | Conf | | |
| Hydrodynamics and mouth conditions score | 80 | 80 | 87 | 70 | 93 | 80 | L | | |

7.3.3 Water quality

Table 7.13 provides Summary of the occurrence of the abiotic states under the Reference Condition, Present State and Scenarios 1 to 5.

| Table 7.13 | Summary of the occurrence of the abiotic states under the Reference Condition, |
|------------|--|
| | Present State and Scenarios 1 to 5. |

| Abiotic State | Natural | Procont | Scenario | | | | | | |
|---------------|---------|---------|----------|----|----|----|----|--|--|
| ADIOLIC State | Naturai | Flesen | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | | |
| 1 | 47 | 59 | 59 | 54 | 67 | 44 | 59 | | |
| 2 | 36 | 25 | 25 | 29 | 18 | 39 | 25 | | |
| 3 | 17 | 16 | 16 | 17 | 15 | 17 | 16 | | |

Scoring of Future scenarios in respect of Salinity/DIN/DIP, SS/Turbidity/ Transparency, DO and Toxic substances, followed a similar approach as described earlier for the Present State. Based on the above the estimated changes in water quality (salinity, DIN, DIP, suspended solids and dissolved oxygen) in different zones under the different scenarios are presented in Table 7.14 Details on the change in the axial salinity gradient, DIN/DIP, suspended solids, dissolved oxygen, and toxic substances are provided in Table 7.15.

| Zones in Estuary | Volume weighting | Estimated <u>SALINITY</u> concentration based on distribution of abiotic states under a range of Scenario Groups | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------|---------------------|---|---------|----|----|----|----|----|--|--|--|
| | for Zone | Reference | Present | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | | | |
| Lower | 0.65 | 14 | 14 | 14 | 14 | 14 | 15 | 14 | | | |
| Middle | 0.25 | 9 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 11 | 9 | 10 | | | |
| Upper | 0.10 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | | | |

Table 7.14. Estimated changes in water quality in different zones under different scenarios

| Zones in Estuarv | Volume weighting | ume Estimated <u>DIN</u> concentration (μg/l) based on distribution of abiotic states under a range of Scenario Groups | | | | | | | |
|------------------|---------------------|--|---------|-----|-----|------|------|-----|--|
| | for Zone | Reference | Present | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | |
| Lower | 0.65 | 83 | 299 | 215 | 476 | 1462 | 665 | 215 | |
| Middle | 0.25 | 83 | 312 | 240 | 505 | 1480 | 707 | 240 | |
| Upper | 0.10 | 83 | 354 | 282 | 642 | 2507 | 1005 | 282 | |

| Zones in Estuary weighting | | Estimated <u>DIP</u> concentration (µg/I) based on distribution of abiotic states under a range of Scenario Groups | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------|----------|--|---------|----|-----|------|------|----|--|
| | for Zone | Reference | Present | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | |
| Lower | 0.65 | 12 | 53 | 13 | 495 | 3745 | 1208 | 13 | |
| Middle | 0.25 | 12 | 55 | 13 | 539 | 4772 | 1286 | 13 | |
| Upper | 0.10 | 12 | 70 | 22 | 730 | 4337 | 1765 | 22 | |

| Zones in Estuary | Volume weighting | Volume Estimated <u>TURBIDITY (NTU)</u> based on distribution of abiotic states under range of Scenario Groups | | | | | | | |
|------------------|---------------------|---|---------|----|----|----|----|----|--|
| , | for Zone | Reference | Present | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | |
| Lower | 0.65 | 17 | 40 | 40 | 42 | 38 | 42 | 40 | |
| Middle | 0.25 | 17 | 40 | 40 | 42 | 38 | 42 | 40 | |
| Upper | 0.10 | 17 | 49 | 49 | 51 | 46 | 51 | 49 | |

| Zones in Estuary weighting | | Estimated DISSOLVED OXYGEN concentration (mg/l) based on distribution of abiotic states under a range of Scenario Groups | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------|----------|--|---------|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| Zones in Estuary | for Zone | Reference | Present | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | | |
| Lower | 0.65 | 6 | 5 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 4 | 5 | | |
| Middle | 0.25 | 6 | 5 | 5 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 5 | | |
| Upper | 0.10 | 6 | 5 | 5 | 3 | 1 | 2 | 5 | | |

| Table 7.15. | Summary of water quality changes under different scenarios |
|-------------|--|
|-------------|--|

| Parameter | Summary Of Changes |
|---|--|
| Changes in longitudinal salinity gradient and vertical stratification | Slight $\hat{\mathbf{u}}$ due to increase in low flow conditions |
| Inorganic nutrients in estuary | $\hat{\mathbf{u}}$ due to nutrient enrichment from agriculture and WWTWs |
| Turbidity in estuary | \hat{u} due to increased turbidity from agricultural disturbance especially during higher flows (State 3) |
| Dissolved oxygen in estuary | $\hfill \$ due to organic accumulation from WWTWs especially during State 1 (Close) and State 2 (Open, limited marine) |
| Toxic substances in estuary | ம் urban inputs |

A summary of the water quality scores are provided in Table 7.16

Table 7.16 EHI scores for water quality under different scenarios

| | Variable | | Scenario Group | | | | | | |
|---|--|----|----------------|----|----|----|----|------|--|
| | | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | Conf | |
| 1 | Salinity | | | | | | | | |
| | Similarity in salinity | 97 | 97 | 98 | 96 | 99 | 97 | L | |
| 2 | 2 General water quality in the estuary | | | | | | | | |
| а | N and P concentrations | 39 | 73 | 17 | 6 | 12 | 73 | L | |
| b | Turbidity | 58 | 58 | 56 | 61 | 56 | 58 | L | |
| с | Dissolved oxygen | 93 | 93 | 75 | 66 | 77 | 93 | L | |
| d | Toxic substances | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 | L | |
| | Water quality score | 62 | 74 | 49 | 42 | 47 | 74 | L | |

* Score = (0.4 * 1.+0.6 * (min (2a. to 2d.))

7.3.4 Physical habitats

Table 7.17 provides a summary of the changes in physical habitat under the different scenarios for the Mhlali Estuary. Physical habitat scores are summarised in Table 7.18.

| | Parameter | Scenario Group |
|----|--|--|
| 1a | % Similarity in intertidal area exposed | Under Scenarios 1 to 5 the sediment processes are similar to the Present State. There are some loss of intertidal habitat due deposition and infilling of the intertidal habitat. In addition, Under Scenario 2 and 3 there is also less exposed intertidal habitat due to increases mouth closure and greater mouth restriction. While under Scenario 4 there is more exposed intertidal habitat due to decrease mouth closure. |
| 1b | % Similarity in sand fraction relative to total sand and mud | Under Scenarios 1 to 5 the sand: mud ratio are similar to the Present State. The score of 60 is based on increase in clay and silt fractions experienced in similar systems, especially in Zone B and C. |
| 2 | % Similarity in intertidal area: depth, bed or channel morphology | Under Scenarios 1 to 4 the subtidal area are similar to the Present State. There has been some infilling of sub-tidal areas as a result of the increase sediment yield from the catchment and sugarcane farming in the surrounding environs. There is also indications that the bridges are causing localise changes in bathymetry of the system. Under Scenario 5 water levels increase to more natural levels. The subtidal score was adjusted to reflect this change in average water level under this scenario. |

 Table 7.17
 Summary of physical habitat changes under different scenarios

| Table 7.18 | EHI scores for physical habitat under different scenarios |
|------------|---|
|------------|---|

| Variable | Scenario Group | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------|----|----|----|----|----|------|--|
| Variable | Present | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | Conf | |
| 1a. Intertidal areas and sediments | 60 | 60 | 65 | 55 | 70 | 60 | L | |
| 1b.Similarity in sand fraction | 60 | 60 | 60 | 60 | 60 | 60 | L | |
| 2. Subtidal area and sediments | 60 | 60 | 60 | 60 | 60 | 80 | L | |
| Physical habitat score | 60 | 60 | 61 | 59 | 63 | 73 | L | |

7.4 BIOTIC COMPONENT

7.4.1 Microalgae

Changes and scores are summarised in Table 7.19 and Table 7.20.

| Table 7.19 | Summary of cl | ange in microalga | e component under | different scenarios |
|------------|---------------|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
|------------|---------------|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------|

| Scenario | Summary of Changes |
|----------|--|
| Natural | Natural |
| Present | Main change is loss of open water area and some elevated nutrients |
| 1 | Reduced microalgal biomass – closer to reference |

| 2 | Considerable increase in microalgal biomass c.f present |
|---|---|
| 3 | Much higher microalgal biomass than present with changes in species composition |
| 4 | Much higher microalgal biomass than present with changes in species composition |
| 5 | Decrease in nutrients to acceptable levels |

Table 7.20 EHI scores for microalgae component under different scenarios

| Voriable | Scenario | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------|----|----|----|----|----|------|--|
| variable | Present | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | CONF | |
| 1. Species richness | 50 | 55 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 70 | L | |
| 2. Abundance | 50 | 55 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 80 | L | |
| 3. Community composition | 60 | 60 | 60 | 60 | 60 | 70 | L | |
| Biotic component score | 50 | 55 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 70 | L | |

7.4.2 Macrophytes

The increase in low flow and input of nutrients from the WWTW has caused macrophytes to cover large areas of the water channel and open sand and mud banks resulting in loss of this habitat. There has also been an increase in aquatic invasives indicative of eutrophic conditions. The future scenarios mostly deal with these responses (Table 7.21). In Scenario 1 the effect of the WWTW is removed, thus resulting in an improvement of macrophytes. The decrease in nutrients would reduce the extent of aquatic invasives and prevent some reed growth in the main water channel. For Scenario 2 there is an increase in waste water inflow, low flow conditions are improved and the mouth is open more frequently, however the increased nutrients result in a eutrophic, degraded estuary. There will be an increase in MAR but the WWTWs are operational. As a result of this there is an excessive increase in nutrients as the mouth is closed more frequently. Invasive aquatics will proliferate and there will be an increase in reeds, sedges and grasses with little remaining open water surface area. Scenario 4 represents the WWTWs at full capacity and MAR will be > 104% of natural. The mouth will be open more frequently which will dilute some of the nutrient effect.

Overall the macrophytes respond to the large increases in nutrients as a result of wastewater input. This would result in algal blooms (both phytoplankton and macroalgae), infestation by aquatic invasives such as the rooted aquatics e.g. parrots feather or the floating aquatics e.g. water hyacinth. All macrophytes particularly reeds, sedges and grasses would grow rapidly in response to the increase in nutrients. Die-back would increase the organic load in the estuary resulting in anoxic conditions.

| Table 7.21 | Summary of change in macrophytes component under different scenarios |
|------------|--|
|------------|--|

| Scenario | Summary of Changes |
|------------|---|
| Scenario 1 | Inutrients which would reduce the extent of aquatic invasives and prevent some reed and other macrophyte growth into the main water channel. The mouth is closed for 59% of the time which is similar to present. |

| Scenario 2 | \hat{v} wastewater flow \mathbb{Q} State 1 (i.e. closed mouth conditions, mouth closed for 54% of the time), \hat{v} nutrients causes \hat{v} eutrophication resulting in \hat{v} reeds, sedges, grasses and invasive aquatic species. |
|------------|--|
| Scenario 3 | Worst case scenario \mathbb{Q} in MAR (81 %) and \mathbb{C} nutrient concentrations from WWTW that are retained in the estuary due to \mathbb{C} State 1 (i.e. closed mouth conditions, mouth closed for 66% of the time). \mathbb{C} reeds, algal blooms and invasive floating macrophytes due to nutrients. Invasive aquatics will become a problem. |
| Scenario 4 | \hat{U} MAR (104 %) due to full capacity WWTW. State 1 resembles natural conditions closed for 44% of time compared to 47%. \hat{U} nutrient concentrations from WWTW but because mouth opens not as severe as Scenario 3. \hat{U} reeds, algal blooms and invasive floating macrophytes. |
| Scenario 5 | Much improved scenario where the input of nutrients is reduced and sugarcane is removed from the EFZ. There will be less reed encroachment and development of algal blooms and floating invasive macrophytes. An increase in species richness is expected. |

Macrophyte scores are summarised in Table 7.22.

| Variable | Scenario | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------|----|----|----|----|----|------|--|
| Vallable | Present | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | CONF | |
| 1. Species richness | 80 | 80 | 75 | 70 | 75 | 85 | L | |
| 2. Abundance | 52 | 54 | 50 | 47 | 50 | 70 | L | |
| 3. Community composition | 52 | 55 | 50 | 48 | 48 | 70 | L | |
| Biotic component score | 52 | 54 | 50 | 47 | 48 | 70 | L | |

Table 7.22 EHI scores for macrophyte component under different scenarios

7.4.3 Invertebrates

This section describes the changes in invertebrates for the different run-off scenarios. Changes and scores are summarised in Table 7.23 and Table 7.24.

| Table 7.23 | Summary of change in invertebrates component under different scenarios |
|------------|--|
|------------|--|

| Scenario | Summary of Changes |
|----------|---|
| 1 | Slight improvement in flows and water quality will produce a very small change in the invertebrate community relative to the present day. |
| 2 | Addition of WWTW discharge and mouth state . The invertebrate community would respond to the increase in mouth opening (state 1) but water quality impacts, which already limit invertebrate species richness and abundance, become even limiting. Reduced dissolved oxygen concentrations will prevent the development of a typical estuarine invertebrate community affecting the benthos more than the zooplankton but with prolonged exposure the water column will also be impacted. |
| 3 | High nutrients and reduced flushing increases the likelihood of severe impact to the invertebrate communities as described for 2. Marked reductions in species richness and abundance predicted. |
| 4 | Higher volumes of nutrient rich WWTW outflows influences the mouth state with increased open periods similar to reference. However nutrient concentrations at levels to promote nuisance plant growth and algal blooms will further exacerbate the dissolved oxygen issues. |
| 5 | Reduced nutrient inputs and more typical estuarine salinities will promote the development of a diverse community with amphipods, tanaeids and others being present in the community. |

| Abundance levels are anticipated to increase in response to the improved water quality and more stable conditions. Increased carrying capacity available during closed periods with the removal of artificial breaching impacts and the potential for more of the EFZ to be utilised by the aquatic fauna present in the system. |
|--|
| |

| Table 7.24 | EHI scores for invertebrates component under different scenarios |
|------------|--|
| | |

| Variable | Scenario | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------|----|----|----|----|----|------|--|
| Vallable | Present | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | CONF | |
| 1. Species richness | 70 | 80 | 65 | 50 | 65 | 85 | L | |
| 2. Abundance | 40 | 45 | 30 | 20 | 30 | 80 | L | |
| 3. Community composition | 50 | 60 | 40 | 30 | 30 | 80 | L | |
| Biotic component score | 40 | 45 | 30 | 20 | 30 | 80 | L | |

7.4.4 Fish

Responses of fishes in the Mhlali estuary to different water resource development scenarios are informed by anticipated changes in hydrology, water quality and aquatic microalgae, macrophytes and invertebrates as reported upon in other specialist reports conducted as part of the wider EFR study. These are presented in summary format in Table 7.25 below. The health scores of the fish assemblages under these different scenarios are provided in Table 7.26.

| Scenario | Summary of Changes |
|----------|--|
| 1 | Changes in flows and water quality are marginal for the fish assemblage. No notable difference from fish health under present day conditions is expected under this scenario . EHI scores are therefore expected to remain the same as present. |
| 2 | Flows remain broadly similar to present day, with addition of WWTW outflows. This results in a slight decrease in mouth closure (State 1) and an increase in mouth open (State 2) frequency. This would benefit the fish composition of the estuary. However, water quality impacts, which already limit species richness and fish abundance, become even more critical because of elevated nutrient loads. Dissolved oxygen over the whole estuary during the closed phase is not supportive of fishes and marked impacts to the fish community are expected. |
| 3 | This scenario sees similar loads of nutrients delivered to the system as in Scenario 3, but with lower river flows. Impacts noted above are therefore exacerbated. Water quality becomes critical under both Sates 1 and 2. Marked reductions in species richness and abundance are expected. |
| 4 | Full capacity WWTW outflows results in higher than reference condition flows. Water quality impacts on the fish fauna, however, are significant. |
| 5 | Present flows without WWTW inputs, and remedial measures will result in significant improvement in the fish community. Although mouth closure will occur more frequently than under the reference condition, increases (compared to present day) in species richness and abundance of fishes could be expected, as well as shift in species composition that includes an increase in estuarine associated species relative to freshwater fishes. |

| Table 7.25 | Summary of change in fish component under different scenarios |
|------------|---|
| | |

| Variable | Scenario | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------|----|----|----|----|----|------|--|
| Valiable | Present | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | CONF | |
| 1. Species richness | 70 | 70 | 60 | 30 | 40 | 75 | L | |
| 2. Abundance | 60 | 60 | 40 | 30 | 30 | 70 | L | |
| 3. Community composition | 60 | 65 | 50 | 35 | 40 | 70 | L | |
| Biotic component score | 60 | 60 | 40 | 30 | 30 | 70 | L | |

 Table 7.26
 EHI scores for fish component under different scenarios

7.4.5 Birds

This section describes the changes in bird for the different run-off scenarios. Changes and scores are summarised in Table 7.27 and Table 7.28.

| Table 7.27 | Summary of change in bird component under different scenario |
|------------|--|
| | |

| Scenario | Summary of Changes |
|----------|--|
| 1 | Improvement in waterbird habitat related to enhanced water quality. |
| 2 - 4 | Deterioration in conditions related to waterbirds associated with decreased water quality and expected habitat loss through burgeoning macrophtyte growth, both resulting in decrease in food availability. Also increased human disturbance in Estuary Functional Zone. |
| 5 | Even greater improvement than under Scenario 1, due to the various management interventions enhancing estuary functioning and drawing estuary back towards reference condition. |

 Table 7.28
 EHI scores for bird component under different scenarios

| Variable | Scenario | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------|----|----|----|----|----|------|--|
| Valiable | Present | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | CONF | |
| 1. Species richness | 70 | 75 | 50 | 30 | 35 | 80 | L | |
| 2. Abundance | 50 | 55 | 30 | 20 | 25 | 65 | L | |
| 3. Community composition | 40 | 45 | 30 | 20 | 25 | 60 | L | |
| Biotic component score | 40 | 45 | 30 | 20 | 25 | 60 | L | |

7.5 ECOLOGICAL CATEGORIES ASSOCIATED WITH SCENARIOS

The individual EHI scores, as well as the corresponding ecological category under different scenarios are provided in Table 7.29. The estuary is currently in a D Category. An evaluation of the four scenarios provided the following insights:

- Under Scenario 1 the Mhlali Estuary will improve slightly in health to a C Category, as a result of improved water quality. This scenario represents the recent past before the varouis current and planned WWTW came on line.
- While, under Scenario 2 the estuary will deteriorate further in health by about 3% as a result of deteriorating water quality conditions.

- Under Scenario 3 the estuary will deteriorate significantly, by about 15 % as a result of severely deteriorating water quality conditions and reduce in river flow. Under this scenario treated effluent become the dominant source of freshwater to the system under low to average inflow conditions.
- Under Scenario 4 the estuary will also deteriorate significantly, by about 14%, as a result of severely deteriorating water quality conditions and an increase in freshwater inflow associated with the maximum discharges to the system..

None of the scenarios (1 to 4) achieved the REC for the Mhlali Estuary. Therefore a sensitivity test, Scenario 5, was conducted. Scenario 5 is based on the freshwater inflow simulated for Scenario 1 in conjunction with the following management interventions:

- Reduce the nutrient input from the WWTW and catchment to control growth of reeds and aquatic invasive plants;
- Remove the sugarcane from the Estuary Functional Zone (below 5 m contour) to allow for a buffer against human disturbance and the development of a transitional vegetation ecotone between estuarine and terrestrial ecosystems;
- Removal of vegetation from main river channel in upper reaches, including invasive aliens plants and strands of eucalypts (using CoastCare programme);
- Ensure that the estuary is not artificial breached; and
- Remove the old saltwater weir from middle reaches of system.

Scenario 5 achieved the REC of a B.

| Verieble | Waight | Scenario Group | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------|----------------|----|----|----|----|----|------|
| vanable | weight | Present | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | Conf |
| Hydrology | 25 | 62 | 72 | 97 | 65 | 73 | 72 | L |
| Hydrodynamics and mouth condition | 25 | 80 | 80 | 87 | 70 | 93 | 80 | L |
| Water quality | 25 | 62.2 | 74 | 49 | 42 | 47 | 74 | L |
| Physical habitat alteration | 25 | 60 | 60 | 61 | 59 | 63 | 73 | L |
| Habitat health score | | 66 | 71 | 74 | 59 | 55 | 75 | |
| Microalgae | 20 | 50 | 55 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 70 | L |
| Macrophytes | 20 | 51 | 53 | 49 | 40 | 48 | 70 | L |
| Invertebrates | 20 | 40 | 45 | 30 | 20 | 30 | 80 | L |
| Fish | 20 | 60 | 60 | 40 | 30 | 30 | 70 | L |
| Birds | 20 | 40 | 45 | 30 | 20 | 25 | 60 | L |
| Biotic health score | | 48 | 52 | 34 | 26 | 31 | 70 | |
| ESTUARY HEALTH SCORE | | 57 | 62 | 54 | 42 | 43 | 72 | L |
| ECOLOGICAL STATUS | | D | С | D | D | D | В | |

Table 7.29 EHI score and corresponding Ecological Categories under the different runoff scenarios

8 **RECOMMENDATIONS**

8.1 ECOLOGICAL FLOW REQUIREMENTS

The 'recommended Ecological Flow Requirement' scenario, is defined as the flow scenario (or a slight modification thereof to address low-scoring components) that represents the highest change in river inflow that will still maintain the estuary in the REC. Where any component of the health score is less than 40, then modifications to flow and measures to address anthropogenic impacts must be found that will rectify this.

Based on this assessment, we have ascertained that the REC for the Mhlali Estuary is a Category B.

The flow requirements for the estuary are the same as those described for Scenario 1 and are summarised in Table 8.1.

| %ile | Oct | Nov | Dec | Jan | Feb | Mar | Apr | Мау | Jun | Jul | Aug | Sep |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|-------|------|------|-------|
| 99.9 | 12.92 | 17.08 | 16.38 | 17.46 | 19.97 | 26.62 | 12.01 | 5.80 | 20.45 | 6.22 | 1.01 | 28.77 |
| 99 | 12.45 | 13.49 | 14.03 | 15.76 | 17.38 | 23.93 | 11.05 | 5.64 | 5.21 | 1.81 | 0.80 | 7.37 |
| 90 | 1.99 | 6.31 | 5.59 | 6.59 | 11.11 | 7.91 | 4.59 | 2.15 | 0.53 | 0.37 | 0.38 | 0.50 |
| 80 | 1.05 | 3.19 | 3.69 | 4.81 | 7.72 | 5.19 | 2.60 | 0.68 | 0.29 | 0.23 | 0.18 | 0.30 |
| 70 | 0.52 | 2.19 | 2.40 | 3.44 | 4.12 | 3.75 | 1.64 | 0.42 | 0.19 | 0.07 | 0.10 | 0.23 |
| 60 | 0.42 | 1.01 | 1.65 | 2.59 | 2.78 | 2.41 | 0.86 | 0.30 | 0.11 | 0.06 | 0.08 | 0.15 |
| 50 | 0.32 | 0.63 | 1.06 | 1.73 | 2.10 | 1.53 | 0.59 | 0.21 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 0.08 |
| 40 | 0.24 | 0.44 | 0.62 | 0.91 | 1.25 | 0.91 | 0.42 | 0.15 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.07 |
| 30 | 0.15 | 0.34 | 0.45 | 0.56 | 0.64 | 0.55 | 0.31 | 0.11 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.05 |
| 20 | 0.08 | 0.24 | 0.33 | 0.39 | 0.50 | 0.33 | 0.21 | 0.08 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.05 |
| 10 | 0.06 | 0.10 | 0.14 | 0.26 | 0.24 | 0.17 | 0.08 | 0.07 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.04 |
| 1 | 0.04 | 0.05 | 0.06 | 0.08 | 0.07 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.03 | 0.03 | 0.03 | 0.03 |
| 0.1 | 0.04 | 0.04 | 0.05 | 0.06 | 0.06 | 0.05 | 0.04 | 0.03 | 0.02 | 0.02 | 0.02 | 0.02 |

 Table 8.1
 The ecological flow requirements (in m³.s⁻¹) of the Mhlali Estuary

8.2 RESOURCE QUALITY OBJECTIVES

Note that since the estuary has to be restored from a D to a B-category, the thresholds of potential concern (TPCs) should be seen as targets to be met within 5 years. Thereafter the estuary should be maintained such that these thresholds are not breached. The TPCs for the Mhlali Estuary area listed in Table 8.1 and Table 8.2.

| Abiotic Component | Ecological Specification | Threshold of Potential Concern | Causes |
|-------------------------|---|---|--|
| | Salinity distribution not to cause exceedence of TPCs for fish, invertebrates, macrophytes and microalgae (see above) | Salinity values > 20 PSU in middle reaches during the low flow season No 10 – 15 PSU zone detected in the estuary for 2 consecutive sampling event in a row.surveys. Freshwater dominated (i.e. 0 PSU) for > 20% of the time | Flow regime changes |
| | System variables (pH, dissolved oxygen and turbidity) not to cause exceedence of TPCs for biota (see above) | River inflow: 7.0 < pH > 8.5 over 2 months DO < 6 mg/l Turbidity >15 NTU (low flow) Turbidity high flows naturally turbid Estuary: Average turbidity >10 NTU (low flow) Turbidity high flow, naturally turbid Average 7.0 < pH > 8.5 Average DO < 6 mg/l | Agricultural return flow Municipal wastewater (organic loading) |
| Water Quality (PES/REC) | Inorganic nutrient concentrations (NO ₃ -N, NH ₃ - N and PO ₄ -P) not to cause in exceedance of TPCs for macrophytes and microalgae (see above) | River inflow: NO_x-N >200 µg/l over 2 months NH₃-N> 20 µg/l over 2 months PO₄-P > 10 µg/l over 2 months Estuary: Average NO_x-N > 200 µg/l Average NH₃-N > 20 µg/l Average PO₄-P > 10 µg/l | Agricultural return flow (nutrients) Municipal wastewater (nutrients) |
| | Presence of toxic substances not to cause exceedence of TPCs for biota (see above) | River inflow: Trace metals (to be determined) Pesticides/herbicides (to be determine) Estuary Total metal concentrations in estuary waters exceed target values as per SA Water Quality Guidelines for coastal marine waters (DWAF, 1995) Total metal concentration in sediment exceeds target values as per WIO Region guidelines (UNEP/Nairobi Convention Secretariat and CSIR, 2009) | Agricultural return flow (pesticides/herbicides) Municipal wastewater including industrial trade effluent (e.g. metals) |
| Hydrology | Maintain a flow regime to create the required habitat for birds, fish, macrophytes, microalgae and water quality | • River inflow distribution patterns differ by more than 5% from that of Scenario 1 (i.e. approved flow scenario for the Mhlali Estuary). | Flow reduction |

Table 8.2 Mhlali Ecological specifications and thresholds of potential concern for abiotic components

| Abiotic Component | Ecological Specification | Threshold of Potential Concern | Causes |
|-------------------|---|--|---|
| Hydrodynamics | Maintain a mouth conditions to create the required habitat for birds, fish, macrophytes, microalgae and water quality | Mouth closure regime shifts by ± 5% from present baseline of 52% of the time for more than 1 year in a row. Breaching levels are < 3.0 m MSL | Flow reduction or increase Artificial breaching or too frequent breaching due to increase flow |
| Sediment dynamics | Flood regime to maintain the sediment distribution patterns and aquatic habitat (instream physical habitat) so as not to exceed TPCs for biota (see above) | River inflow distribution patterns (flood components) differ by more than 20% (in terms of magnitude, timing and variability) from that of the Present State (2013) Suspended sediment concentration from river inflow deviates by more than 20% of the sediment load-discharge relationship to be determined as part of baseline studies (Present State 2013) Findings from the bathymetric surveys undertaken as part of a monitoring programme indicate changes in the sedimentation and erosion patterns in the estuary have occurred (± 0.5 m). Intertidal and subtidal habitat in Zone C and D are not available for estuarine species (increase by > 20% from present). | <i>Reduced floods</i><i>Poor landuse</i> |
| | Changes in sediment grain size distribution patterns not to cause exceedance of TPCs in benthic invertebrates (see above). | The median bed sediment diameter deviates by more than a factor of two from levels to be determined as part of baseline studies (Present State 2013). Sand/mud distribution in middle and upper reaches change by more than 20% from Present State (2013). Changes in tidal amplitude at the tidal gauge of more than 20% from Present State (2013) | <i>Reduced floods</i><i>Poor landuse</i> |

Table 8.3 Ecological specifications and thresholds of potential concern for biotic components

| Component | Ecological Specification | Threshold of Potential Concern | Possible causes |
|-------------|--|--|--|
| | Maintain current microalgae assemblages, | Medium phytoplankton: > 2µg/l for more than 50% of the stations | Excessive nutrient levels in the water |
| Microalgae | of the total population in saline reaches (i.e. Zone A in low flow) | MPB: > 10mg m^2 for more than 50% of the stations in the saline portion of the estuary | |
| | | Observable bloom in the estuary | |
| | Maintain the distribution of macrophyte habitats. | No increase in area covered by estuarine macrophytes; reclamation from sugarcane and disturbance. | Reduced flow, sedimentation, infilling and spread of vegetation. |
| Macrophytes | No invasive aquatic species present in the estuary e.g. water hyacinth | Invasive plants (e.g. syringa berry, Spanish reed, Brazilian pepper tree) cover >5% of total macrophyte area. Eucalypus stand below the N2 present. Floating invasive aquatics observed in the estuary | Disturbance |

| • No sugarcane in the EFZ (estuarine functional zone. • Sugarcane is present in the estuarine functional zone. • Increase in nutricents and possible eutrophication. • Maintain a high species diversity (including seasonal variation) • Maintain a high species diversity (including seasonal variation) • Species diversity should remain between 30 – 50 species diversity and abundance that includes a variety of indigenous benthic macroinvertebrates. • Movita entrichment. • Dissolved oxygen Invertebrates • Moluccan groups including Breshdorites the estuary based on species diversity and abundance that includes a variety of indigenous benthic macroinvertebrates. • Polychaetes. amphicods and tanaodcs should nuclivation and vary by more than 10% excluding seasonal variation. • Mouth closure Invertebrates • Moluccan groups including Breshdorites the estuary beach in the information and possible excluding seasonal variation. • The abundance of alt taxon groups including groups should be higher during witter / low How and closed mouth periods • The there are in the norther arm of the system • However, abundance of alt taxon groups is should be present in the norther arm of the system. • Oreochromis mossambicus dominate the fish assentibles (or mount obsection in the estuary). • Oreochromis mossambicus dominate the fish assentibles (by duradance) • Poor water quality. • However, abundance of estuarine resident is process occur. • Sole a blacker, Pornadasys commersonil, Acambrapars langu. Groups result. • Sole a blacker, Porenadasys commersonil, Acambrapars langu. Sonobis, Tergon | Component | Ecological Specification | Threshold of Potential Concern | Possible causes |
|--|---------------|--|---|---|
| • Maintain a high species diversity (including seasonal variation) • Maintain a high species diversity (including seasonal variation) • Species diversity should remain between 30 – 50 species dowygen species diversity and abundance that includes a variety of indigenous benthic macroinvertebrates. • Mouth closure + Loss of baseflows - Loss of basefl | | • No sugarcane in the EFZ (estuarine functional zone). | Sugarcane is present in the estuarine functional zone. | Increase in nutrients and possible eutrophication. |
| Fish• High nursery value function in the estuary is the result of water quality supportive of aquatic life, including sensitive species, and functional habitats over all estuarine zones, including | Invertebrates | Maintain a high species diversity (including seasonal variation) An invertebrate community assemblage in the estuary based on species diversity and abundance that includes a variety of indigenous benthic macroinvertebrates. Molluscan groups including Brachidontes bivalves present in the fresher zones of the estuary or more widespread throughout the estuary during fresh conditions. However, abundance of all taxon groups should be higher during winter / low flow and closed mouth periods The thallasinid Callianassa kraussi should be present in the northern arm of the system. | Species diversity should remain between 30 – 50 species Polychaetes, amphipods and tanaeids should numerically dominate during all seasons. The abundance of benthic macroinvertebrates should not vary by more than 10% excluding seasonal variation. | Nutrient enrichment Dissolved oxygen Loss of baseflows Mouth closure Artificial breaching |
| | Fish | High nursery value function in the estuary is the result of water quality supportive of aquatic life, including sensitive species, and functional habitats over all estuarine zones, including areas that back fill during the mouth closed state. Permanent populations of estuarine resident species occur in the estuary. No exotic fish species occur. | Oreochromis mossambicus dominate the fish assemblage (by abundance) Absence from the system of two or more of the following estuarine dependent species: Solea bleekeri, Pomadasys commersonnii, Acanthopagrus vagus, Rhabdosargus holubi, Terapon jarbua, Gerres methueni and Monodactylus spp. Less than four mullet species occur. Any one of the following estuarine residents taxa does not occur: Glossogobius callidus Ambassis spp. and Gilchristella aestuaria. No piscivorous species occur (both Caranx spp and Argyrosomus japonicus absent). Presence of predatory exotic fish species. | Poor water quality Habitat infill Mouth breaching |

| Component | Ecological Specification | Threshold of Potential Concern | Possible causes |
|-----------|---|--|---|
| | avifaunal waterbird community that includes representatives of all the major groups, i.e. aerial (e.g. kingfishers), swimming (e.g. cormorants) and large wading piscivores (e.g. herons), small invertebrate-feeding waders, including migratory Palaearctic sandpipers, herbivorous waterfowl (e.g. ducks and geese) and roosting terns and gull. | resident pair of African Fish Eagles. Numbers of bird species drops below 20 for 3 consecutive counts. Number of roosting terns recorded in mid-summer fewer than 500. | the estuary/riverbed, i.e. reedbeds, aquatic grasses and alien trees. Eutrophication of water supply, e.g. nutrients. Unavailability of food supply, e.g. due to excessive turbidity, alien floating macrophytes, etc. Human disturbance. Reduction in food supply. |

8.3 MONITORING REQUIREMENTS

Sustainable management of the Mhlali Estuary can only be achieved through a sound understanding of its biophysical process based on appropriate and reliable quantitative data. However, the collection, processing and interpretation of such data are often time consuming and costly, and often require considerable scientific expertise.

Recommendation for the monitoring of Mhlali Estuary's biophysical processes based on the following documentation: 1) current data collection methods, 2) the baseline data requirements for the Resource Directed Measures methods for estuaries addressing the Ecological Reserve (Version 2 and 3) (DWAF 2008) and 3) the guidelines and procedures to design resource monitoring programmes for estuaries as part of the Ecological Reserve Determination process for estuaries (Taljaard et al. 2003).

Resource monitoring programmes can be sub-divided into (Taljaard et al. 2003):

- **Baseline surveys (or studies),** the purpose of which is to collect data and information to characterize and understand the ecosystem functioning of a specific system. The baseline studies that are carried out for an Ecological Reserve determination study at Comprehensive level may be considered as the baseline data against which the long-term monitoring is carried out on estuaries. If less than the recommended baseline studies for a comprehensive assessment was carried out, due to the Ecological Reserve study being carried out at a rapid or intermediate level as was the case for the Great Brak Estuary, additional 'baseline' work will definitely be required to produce sufficient baseline data against which future long-term monitoring can take place.
- Long-term (or compliance) monitoring programmes to assess (or audit) whether the management objectives are being achieved. The purpose of long-term monitoring programmes, in this context, is to assess (or audit) whether the Ecological Specifications (defined as part of the Ecological Reserve determination process) are being complied with after implementation of the Reserve. In addition, these programmes can also be used to improve and refine the Ecological Reserve measures (including the Resource Quality Objectives), in the longer-term through an iterative process (Taljaard et al., 2003). Although baseline studies and long-term monitoring programmes have different purposes, it is extremely important that long-term monitoring programmes follow on from similarly structured baseline studies. In essence, the monitoring activities conducted as part of the baseline studies, but implemented on less intensive spatial and/or temporal scales (Taljaard et al., 2003).

It is important to note the difference between survey and monitoring: <u>Surveys</u> normally refers to short-term or once-off, intensive investigations on a wide range of parameters to obtain a better <u>understanding of estuarine processes</u>. <u>Monitoring</u> refers to <u>ongoing data collection</u> of a selection of indicator parameters in order to determine long-term change and trends. Long-term monitoring can be done for several reasons, one of which is for compliance monitoring.

A list of abiotic indictors that should always be included in long-term monitoring programmes to allow for proper identification of 'cause and effect' links, in particular links to river inflow and water quality are (Taljaard et al. 2003):

• River inflow (i.e. flow gauging);

- Continuous water level recording at the estuary mouth (recording the state of the mouth, a key driver for most biotic components);
- Water quality of river inflow;
- Water quality and flow rate of effluent discharges into the estuary; and
- Salinity distribution patterns under different river flow ranges.

Aerial photographs and high resolution satellite imagery, collected on a regular basis, are also considered as key components in the long-term monitoring of estuaries, as these provide useful information on both abiotic and biotic components (Taljaard et al. 2003).

Criteria that should be considered in the selection and prioritisation of biotic indicators for long-term monitoring programmes include:

- The biotic indicators should be particularly <u>sensitive to potential impacts associated with</u> <u>changes in river inflow and water quality</u>, such as state of the mouth, tidal variation, sedimentation/erosion, salinity distribution patterns and deterioration in water quality.
- Biotic components considered to be on a <u>'trajectory of change'</u> or that are particularly sensitive to abiotic components that are on a 'trajectory of change' (e.g. long term sedimentation), should also be considered for inclusion as indicators in long-term monitoring programmes.
- Biotic components that are of <u>regional or national biodiversity importance</u> are also suitable indicators, particularly when also sensitive to changes in river inflow and water quality.
- Biotic indicators should also be representative of the important food chains present in a particular system.
- The selection of biotic indicators should also present a balance between <u>indicators that</u> <u>provides 'early warning' signals and those that reflect longer-term, more cumulative effects</u>. For example, fish are often considered to be useful 'early warning' indicators, while macrophyte distribution patterns are often better indicators of cumulative, longer-term changes in estuaries.
- Biotic indicators should include economic important indicators where relevant.

Recommended base line monitoring requirements to improve EWR study confidence (Table 8.3) and the minimum monitoring requirements to ascertain impacts of changes in freshwater flow to the estuary and any improvement or reductions therein are listed in Table 8.3 below.

| Ecological Component | Monitoring Action | Temporal Scale (Frequency And When) | Spatial Scale (No. Stations) |
|-------------------------|---|--|---|
| | Record water levels | Continuous | At bridge |
| Hydrodynamics | Measure freshwater inflow into the estuary | Continuous | Above the estuary |
| | Aerial photographs of estuary (spring low tide) | Every 3 years | Entire estuary |
| Sediment | Bathymetric surveys: Series of cross-section profiles and a longitudinal profile collected at fixed 500 m intervals, but in more detailed in the mouth (every 100m). The vertical accuracy should be about 5 cm. | Every 3 years | Entire estuary |
| dynamics | Set sediment grab samples (at cross section profiles) for analysis of particle size distribution (PSD) and origin (i.e. using microscopic observations) | Every 3 years (with invertebrate sampling) | Entire estuary (6 stns) |
| Water quality | Longitudinal salinity and temperature profiles system variables (e.g. pH, DO, turbidity, and inorganic nutrients) taken along the length of the estuary collected at: end of low flow season (i.e. period of maximum seawater intrusion/closed mouth) peak of high flow season (i.e. period of maximum flushing by river water) | Once-off | Entire estuary (10 stations) |
| | Measurements of organic content and toxic substances (e.g. trace metals and hydrocarbons) in sediments along length of the estuary, where considered an issue (must also include sediment grain size analysis of samples). | Once-off | Focus on sheltered, depositional areas |
| | Record relative abundance of dominant phytoplankton groups, i.e. flagellates, dinoflagellates, diatoms and blue-green algae | Monthly sampling for 2 years (seasonal trends) | Entire estuary (5 stns) |
| Microalgae | Chlorophyll-a measurements taken at the surface, 0.5 m and 1 m depths, under typically high and low flow conditions using a recognised technique, e.g. HPLC | | |
| | Intertidal and subtidal benthic chlorophyll-a measurements | | |
| Macrophytes | Field survey to map and verify the present low confidence vegetation map, particularly the area currently mapped as swamp forest. Map the areas of invasive species, identify rare and endangered macrophytes and identify areas for floodplain rehabilitation. Compile a comprehensive macrophyte species list. | Summer survey every 3 years | Entire estuary |

| Table 8.4 | Recommended baseline monitoring requirements |
|-----------|--|
|-----------|--|

| Ecological Component | Monitoring Action | Temporal Scale (Frequency And When) | Spatial Scale (No. Stations) |
|-------------------------|---|--|--|
| | Record species and abundance of zooplankton, based on samples collected across the estuary at each of a series of stations along the estuary; | Summer and winter survey for 3 years | Entire estuary (7 stns) |
| Invertebrates | Record benthic invertebrate species and abundance, based on subtidal and intertidal benthic grab and core samples at a series of stations up the estuary, and counts of hole densities; | | |
| | Measures of sediment characteristics at each station | | |
| Fish | Fish species, sizes (standard length) and abundance (CPUE) as sampled by gill net and seine net. Physico-chemical characteristics of the full water column measured; concurrently with fish sampling. | Summer and two winter survey for 3 years | Entire estuary (7 stns) |
| | Undertake counts of all water-associated birds, identified to species level (water status, including mouth condition to be noted and data kept separate for separate standard estuary sections) | A series of monthly counts of all waterbirds for one year. | Entire estuary (data kept separate for separate standard estuary sections) |
| Birds | | Also a series of monthly counts of roosting terns (and gulls) made at dusk for one year. | On the sandbank at the mouth or on sandbanks in the riverbed itself |
| | Locate and monitor African Fish Eagle nest (s) | African Fish Eagle nest to be located annually in winter when incubating and subsequently checked when with small young and when young close to fledging (three visits in total during ca June – September) | Entire estuary |

| Table 8.5 | Recommended long | -term monitoring | requirements |
|-----------|------------------|------------------|--------------|
|-----------|------------------|------------------|--------------|

| Ecological Component | Monitoring Action | Temporal Scale (Frequency And When) | Spatial Scale (No. Stations) |
|-------------------------|--|--|--|
| | Record water levels | Continuous | At bridge |
| Hydrodynamics | Measure freshwater inflow into the estuary | Continuous | Above the estuary |
| | Aerial photographs of estuary (spring low tide) | Every 3 years | Entire estuary |
| Sediment dynamics | Bathymetric surveys: Series of cross-section profiles and a longitudinal profile collected at fixed 500 m intervals, but in more detailed in the mouth (every 100m). The vertical accuracy should be about 5 cm. | Every 3 years | Entire estuary |
| | Set sediment grab samples (at cross section profiles) for analysis of particle size distribution (PSD) and origin (i.e. using microscopic observations) | Every 3 years (with invert sampling) | Entire estuary (6 stns) |
| | Monitoring effluent volume and concentration from Shakaskraal and Tinley Manor WWTWs | Weekly | End of pipe |
| | Water quality (e.g. system variables, nutrients and toxic substances) measurements on river water entering at the head of the estuary | Monthly continuous | Station in River downstream of Shakaskraal WWTW |
| Water quality | Longitudinal salinity and temperature profiles (and any other in situ measurements possible e.g. pH, DO, turbidity) collected during high and low tide at: end of low flow season (i.e. period of maximum seawater intrusion/closed mouth) peak of high flow season (i.e. period of maximum flushing by river water) | Seasonally every year | Entire estuary (10 stations) |
| | Water quality parameters (i.e. system variables, and inorganic nutrients) taken along the length of the estuary (at least surface and bottom samples) | Coinciding with biotic surveys or when significant change in quality expected | Entire estuary (10 stations) |
| | Measurements of organic content and toxic substances (e.g. trace metals and hydrocarbons) in sediments along length of the estuary, where considered an issue (must also include sediment grain size analysis of samples). | Every 3-6 years | Focus on sheltered, depositional areas |

| Ecological Component | Monitoring Action | Temporal Scale (Frequency And When) | Spatial Scale (No. Stations) | |
|-------------------------|--|---|--|--|
| Microalgae | Record relative abundance of dominant phytoplankton groups, i.e. flagellates, dinoflagellates, diatoms and blue-green algae Chlorophyll-a measurements taken at the surface, 0.5 m and 1 m depths, under typically high and low flow conditions using a | Summer and winter survey every 3 years | Entire estuary (5 stns) | |
| | recognised technique, e.g. HPLC, fluoroprobe Intertidal and subtidal benthic chlorophyll-a measurements, | | | |
| Macrophytes | Map the area covered by the different macrophyte habitats. Compile a species list and check for expansion of invasive plants, reed, sedge and grass areas. | Summer survey every 3 years | Entire estuary | |
| | Record species and abundance of zooplankton, based on samples collected across the estuary at each of a series of stations along the estuary; | | | |
| Invertebrates | Record benthic invertebrate species and abundance, based on subtidal and intertidal core samples at a series of stations up the estuary, and counts of hole densities; | Winter/low flow survey every 3 years. | Entire estuary (7 stns) | |
| | Measures of sediment characteristics at each station | | | |
| Fish | Fish species, sizes (standard length) and abundance (CPUE) as sampled by gill net and seine net. Physico-chemical characteristics of the full water column measured; concurrently with fish sampling. | Winter/low flow survey every 3 years. | Entire estuary (7 stns) | |
| Birds | Undertake counts of all water-associated birds, identified to species level (water status, including mouth condition to be noted and data kept separate for separate standard estuary sections) | Winter and summer counts of all waterbirds, including counts of roosting terns (and gulls) made at dusk. | Entire estuary (data kept separate for separate standard estuary sections). Roost counts to cover the sandbank at the mouth or on sandbanks in the riverbed itself. | |
| | Locate and monitor African Fish Eagle nest | African Fish Eagle nest to be located annually in winter when incubating and subsequently checked when with small young and when young close to fledging (three visits in total during June – September) | Entire estuary | |

9 **REFERENCES**

BEGG GW 1978 The Estuaries of Natal. Natal Town and Regional Planning Report 41:1-657 BEGG GW 1984a The Estuaries of Natal. Part 2. Supplement to NTRP Report Vol.41. Natal Town and Regional Planning Main Series Report Vol 55:1-631

- BEGG GW 1984b The Comparative Ecology of Natal's Smaller Estuaries. Natal Town and Regional Planning Report. Vol 62:1-182
- DE VILLIERS S and THIART C. 2007. The nutrient status of South African rivers: concentrations, trends and fluxes from the 1970s to 2005. South African Journal of Science 103: 343-349.
- DEMETRIADES NT, FORBES AT AND HUIZINGA P. 2006. Specialist Report. Identification and assessment of estuarine issues and impact related to the development of the new Tinley Manor wastewater treatment works. Report prepared for Siza Water by Marine and Estuarine Research, Durban.
- DEPARTMENT OF WATER AFFAIRS (DWA). 2004. Revisions of General authorisations in terms of Section 39 of the Nationla Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998)
- DEPARTMENT OF WATER AFFAIRS (DWA). 2009. Executive Summary. Municipal wastewater treatment base information for targeted risk-based regulations. KwaZulu-Natal Province. Status at May 2009.
- DEPARTMENT OF WATER AFFAIRS (DWA). 2012. Green Drop Report 2012. Chapter 8: KwaZulu-Natal Province.
- DEPARTMENT OF WATER AFFAIRS AND FORESTRY (DWAF). 1995. South African Water Quality Guidelines for Coastal Marine Waters. Volume 1: Natural Environment. Pretoria.
- DEPARTMENT OF WATER AFFAIRS AND FORESTRY (DWAF). 2008. Resource Directed Measures for Protection of Water Resources: Methodologies for the determination of ecological water requirements for estuaries. Version 2. Pretoria.
- ELLIOTT M, WHITFIELD AK, POTTER IC, BLABER SJM, CYRUS DP, NORDLIE FG and HARRISON TD. 2007. The guild approach to categorizing estuarine fish assemblages: a global review. Fish and Fisheries 8: 241–268.
- FORBES AT and DEMETRIADES NT 2009. Ecological assessment of the uMhlali Estuary: July – October. Specialist estuarine report for Siza Water. MER Report 1/09.

GEOMEASURE GROUP, 2005. Tinley Manor Waste Water Treatment Works. Scoping Report.

- HARRISON TD AND WHITFIELD AK 2008. Geographical and typological changes in fish guilds of South African estuaries. Journal of Fish Biology 73(10): 2542-2570.
- HARRISON TD, COOPER JAG and RAMM AEL 2000. Geomorphology, ichthyofauna, water quality and aesthetics of South African estuaries. Division of Water, Environment and Forestry Technology, Environmentek, CSIR, South Africa, prepared for the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism. Report ENV-DC 2000-01.

- RAMM, AEL, CERF, EC HARRISON, TD 1986. The Mhlali Estuary. Natal Estuary Status Report. No 61. CSIR. 11 pp.
- TURPIE, JK, TALJAARD, S, ADAMS, JB, VAN NIEKERK, L, FORBES, N, WESTON, B, HUIZINGA, P, WHITFIELD, A. 2012. Methods for the determination of the Ecological Reserve for estuaries. Version 3. Water Research Commission and Department of Water Affairs, Pretoria.
- WHITFIELD AK 1994. An estuary-association classification for the fishes of southern Africa. South African Journal of Science 90: 411-417.

10 Appendix A: MACROPHYTES OF THE MHLALI ESTUARY

By Janine Adams and Meredith Cowie, NMMU

10.1 INTRODUCTION

Mhlali Estuary (29° 27' 43.0524" S 31° 16' 39.1332" E) is a temporarily open/closed estuary situated on the subtropical north coast of KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. The National Biodiversity Assessment of 2011 reported the overall health of Mkomazi Estuary as an Ecological Category of a 'C' (moderately modified) with all components scoring 'fair' and hydrodynamics scoring a 'good', on a scale of excellent to poor (van Niekerk & Turpie, 2012). Mhlali Estuary has experienced a medium reduction in flow and habitat loss and medium threats from pollution. Mining, artificial breaching, fishing and bait collection has been reported (van Niekerk & Turpie, 2012). Mkomazi Estuary is important (67.5) for its habitat (90) and the biodiversity (80) it supports and should therefore be partially protected (Turpie et al., 2007; van Niekerk & Turpie, 2012).

Begg (1978) described Mhlali Estuary 'botanically unimportant' due to habitat removal for sugarcane cultivation. The estuary was severely silted and degraded. Heydorn (1985) stated that Mhlali Estuary was in a fair condition and had potential for conservation. Weir construction had negative impacts on the estuary and the forest was severely depleted. According to Ramm et al. (1986) sugarcane had been planted on the centre island and cattle grazing was encouraged once the cane was harvested. Cooper et al. (1993) described the estuary to be in near pristine condition and Harrison (2000) stated that the aesthetic value was good. Demetriades (2007) in an inventory of sandmining operations in KwaZulu-Natal described four past or present sandmining activities at Mhlali Estuary. Riparian vegetation had been removed for sandmining activities and loose unconsolidated sediments further exacerbate siltation in the estuary.

In terms of macrophyte distribution Begg (1978) described beds of Phragmites sp. occurring on the island between the two arms of the estuary. Swamp forest with a few scattered clumps of freshwater mangrove (Barringtonia racemosa) was present on the southern bank of Mhlali Estuary.

The EIA report (2005) for the Tinley Manor WWTW on the south bank below the N2 described the following invasive aquatic macrophytes in the river; water lettuce (Pistia stratiotes), water hyacinth (Eichhornia crassipes) and parrots feather (Myriophyllum aquaticum). The site of the WWTW is approximately 3.5 km from the mouth of the estuary. Algal blooms were also reported in the estuary and were expected to increase as a result of WWTW discharges. For the streambed and adjacent floodplain of the proposed development area extensive infestation by alien plants was reported. Dominant species were Chromolaena odorata, Lantana camara, Eucalyptus species, Pinus species, Brazilian Pepper and Syringa. Indigenous species along the banks were Wild Date Palm (Phoenix

reclinata), Pigeon wood (Trema orientalis), Powder Puff Tree (Barrington racemosa), Hewitt's Dwarf Morning Glory (Hewittia malabarica), Umdoni trees (Syzygium cordatum), Quinine tree (Rauvolfia caffra), Natal Mahogany (Trichillia dregeana), Perdepis Clausena anisata and Splendid Acacia (Acacia robusta).

The floodplain has been extensively transformed by sugarcane cultivation. This is also the dominant activity in the catchment which would lead to soil erosion and downstream sedimentation, shallowing and macrophyte encroachment into the main river channel. According to the Tinley Manor EIA report (2005) "Large areas of the riparian zone and its buffers have been artificially drained and cultivated for sugarcane whilst remaining areas are infested with alien plants." The general impression is of an extensively degraded system.

Mhlali Estuary was visited in July 2013 so as to determine the present distribution of macrophyte habitats as part of the ecological water requirements study. A vegetation map for present conditions was produced. The distribution and area covered by different macrophyte habitats was compared with the earliest aerial photograph available from 1937. These changes would then provide input to the present ecological status of the estuary.

10.2 MATERIALS AND METHODS

Mhlali Estuary was briefly visited in July 2013 so as to identify the dominant macrophytes and note their distribution along the length of the estuary. Historical distribution of macrophyte habitats were determined using available literature. The present and past distribution of habitats within the estuary were mapped using ESRITM ArcMap 10.1 (2012). The 5 m contour line was used to delineate the boundaries of the estuary. The ESRITM World Imagery basemap of 2013 was used to map present macrophyte distribution. Past area of habitats was mapped using the oldest available aerial images (1937) that had been rectified. The macrophyte habitats mapped are shown in Table 1. The area covered by each macrophyte habitat presently was compared with its past cover to provide an indication of the percentage change in the estuary over time.

10.3 RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

10.3.1 Species composition and macrophyte habitats

Although not mapped swamp forest supporting lagoon hibiscus (Hibiscus tiliaceus) occurred on the banks near the mouth of the estuary where the gradient was unsuitable for sugarcane cultivation (Plate 1). Wild date palm (Phoenix reclinata) and Natal wild banana (Strelitzia nicolai) was conspicuous amongst the swamp forest (Plate 2). Swamp forest likely extends to the middle and upper reaches of the estuary, however this may be coastal forest vegetation and more intensive fieldwork would be required for confirmation. This area would contain invasive trees and shrubs. Common reed (Phragmites australis) and Schoenoplectus scirpoides fringed the water channel in the

lower reaches. The side of the centre island closest to the mouth consisted of a matrix of grasses, P. australis and H. tiliaceus (Plate 1). A sandbar and rocks were present at the mouth when visited in July 2013.

Table 1Macrophyte habitats and functional groups recorded in the estuary (spp. examples
in italics).

| Habitat type | Distribution | | | | |
|---------------------------------|--|----|--|--|--|
| Open surface water area | Serves as a possible habitat for phytoplankton. | 25 | | | |
| Intertidal sand and mudflats | Intertidal zone consisting of sand/mud banks that provides a possible area for microphytobenthos to inhabit. Could not be mapped, but is dynamic and would change over time. | / | | | |
| Swamp forest | Lagoon hibiscus (Hibiscus tiliaceus) and other swamp forest trees present behind the reeds and sedges in the lower reaches of the estuary | 25 | | | |
| Reeds and sedges | Common reed (Phragmites australis) and Schoenoplectus scirpoides fringed the water channel. | 11 | | | |



Figure 1: Distribution of macrophyte habitats at Mhlali Estuary in 1937.



Figure 2: Distribution of macrophyte habitats at Mhlali Estuary in 2013.



Plate 1 Lower reaches of Mhlali Estuary with a matrix of swamp forest, reeds and grasses present on the centre island and swamp forest on the steep south bank. Note the sugarcane cultivation on the south bank (Photo from Meredith Cowie, July 2013).



Plate 2 *Phoenix reclinata* and *Strelitzia nicolai* amongst grasses on the north bank of Mhlali Estuary (Photo from Meredith Cowie, July 2013).

10.3.2 Changes over time in the macrophyte habitats

The present dominance of reeds (*P.* australis) and swamp forest (*H.* tiliaceus) are highly likely the historical macrophyte community situation. Major changes in macrophyte habitat were due to removal for the cultivation of sugarcane. Over 70 % of reed habitat has been lost to sugarcane cultivation. Changes associated with mouth state and nutrient concentrations may have also affected macrophyte abundance and distribution. A reduction in MAR has decreased open water habitat. Although not visible from the short site visit, invasive species have likely also displaced some indigenous species.

| Table 2 Comparison of area (ha) for the different macrophyte habitats at Mhlali Estuary under natural, |
|--|
| earliest aerial imagery (1937) and present (2013) conditions. |

| Macrophyte habitat | Natural | 1937 | 2013 |
|-----------------------|---------|------|------|
| Open Water | 40 | 40 | 25 |
| Sand/mud flats | 10 | 10 | 0 |
| Reeds and sedges | 45 | 30 | 11 |
| Swamp forest | 28 | 16 | 25 |
| Floodplain | 42 | 42 | 24 |
| Disturbed floodplain | 0 | 0 | 30 |
| Sugarcane cultivation | 0 | 27 | 49 |
| Development | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| TOTAL | 165 | 165 | 165 |

References

- BEGG, G. 1978. The Estuaries of Natal: A resource inventory report to the Natal Town and Regional Planning Commission conducted under the auspices of the Oceanographic Research Institute, Durban. Natal Town and Regional Planning Report Vol 41.
- BEGG, G. 1984. The Estuaries of Natal Part 2: Supplement to NTRP Report Vol. 41. Natal Town and Regional Planning Report Vol 55.
- DEMETRIADES, N.T. 2007. An Inventory of Sandmining Operations in KwaZulu-Natal Estuaries: Thukela to Mtamvuna. Investigational report for Coastwatch, WESS KZN.
- HARRISON T.D., COOPER J.A.G. & RAMM A.E.L. 2000. State of South African estuaries. Geomorphology, Ichthyofauna, Water Quality and Aesthetics. State of the Environment Series Report No: 2. Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, South Africa. 127 pp.
- HEYDORN, A.E.F. 1986. An assessment of the state of the estuaries of the Cape and Natal in 1985/1986. South African National Scientific Programmes Report No. 130.
- RAMM, A.E.L., CERFF, E.C. & HARRISON, T.D. 1986. The Mhlali Estuary. Natal Estuary Status Report No. 61. National Institute for Water Research, Estuaries and Coastal Processes Division, CSIR.
- TURPIE, J AND B CLARK. 2007. Development of a conservation plan for temperate South African estuaries on the basis of biodiversity importance, ecosystem health and economic costs and benefits. C.A.P.E. Regional Estuarine Management Programme, Final Report.
- TURPIE, J.K., WILSON, G. & VAN NIEKERK, L. 2012. National Biodiversity Assessment 2011: National Estuary Biodiversity Plan for South Africa. Anchor Environmental Consultants Report No AEC2012/01, Cape Town. Report produced for the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research and the South African National Biodiversity Institute.

11 Appendix B: Historic records of fishes sampled in Mhlali Estuary

| Table 7 | 1: Historic | records | of fishes | sampled | in Mh | ali Estuary | (% | abundance), | frequency | (%) of |
|---------|-------------|-----------|-----------|------------|-------|-------------|----|-------------|-----------|--------|
| occurre | ence and av | verage ab | undance (| %) indicat | ed. | | | | | |

| Reference | Begg (1984a) | Ramm et al. (1986) | Harrison et al. (2000) | Forbes and Demetriades (2009) | cy of ence | ge ince |
|--------------------------|---|-----------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| Sampling date | 1980-1981 (6 surveys over wet and dry seasons) | 1986 (Aug) | 1998 (Oct) | 2008 (Jul, Oct) | Frequen Occurre | Avera abunda |
| Oreochromis mossambicus | 60 | 13 | 80 | 2 | 100 | 9.7 |
| Valamugil cunnesius | 58 | 3 | 50 | 30 | 100 | 7.9 |
| Valamugil buchanani | 55 | 17 | 2 | | 75 | 8.6 |
| Rhabdosargus holubi | 110 | | 147 | 10 | 75 | 7.9 |
| Solea bleekeri | 258 | | 3 | 1 | 75 | 4.1 |
| Myxus capensis | | 6 | 37 | 1 | 75 | 4.1 |
| Liza macrolepis | 13 | 6 | 7 | | 75 | 3.2 |
| Mugil cephalus | 11 | 4 | 28 | | 75 | 2.9 |
| Pomadasys commersonnii | 93 | 1 | 24 | | 75 | 2.7 |
| Ambassis natalensis | 16 | | 5 | 15 | 75 | 2.4 |
| Liza alata | | 2 | 9 | 5 | 75 | 1.9 |
| Gerres methueni | 8 | | 10 | 1 | 75 | 0.6 |
| Mullet fry | | | 111 | 95 | 50 | 16.3 |
| Ambassis productus | 191 | | 59 | | 50 | 4.8 |
| Terapon jarbua | 175 | | 58 | | 50 | 4.6 |
| Oligolepis acutipennis | 260 | | 2 | | 50 | 4.0 |
| Liza dumerilii | | | 27 | 14 | 50 | 2.8 |
| Monodactylus argenteus | 9 | | 55 | | 50 | 2.0 |
| Rhabdosargus sarba | 38 | | | 8 | 50 | 1.6 |
| Glossogobius giuris | 88 | | 2 | | 50 | 1.4 |
| Gilchristella aestuaria | 70 | | 3 | | 50 | 1.2 |
| Glossogobius callidus | | | 11 | 1 | 50 | 0.5 |
| Caranx sexfasciatus | 7 | | 2 | | 50 | 0.2 |
| Acanthopagrus vagus | 2 | | 3 | | 50 | 0.1 |
| Lutjanus fulviflamma | 4 | | 2 | | 50 | 0.1 |
| Argyrosomus japonicus | 3 | | 1 | | 50 | 0.1 |
| Arothron immaculatus | 2 | | 1 | | 50 | 0.1 |
| Psammogobius knysnaensis | 47 | | | | 25 | 0.7 |
| Scomberoides tol | | 1 | | | 25 | 0.5 |
| Hilsa kelee | | 1 | | | 25 | 0.5 |
| Caranx hippos (?) | | 1 | | | 25 | 0.5 |
| Valamugil robustus | | | | 3 | 25 | 0.4 |
| Liza richardsonii | | | | 2 | 25 | 0.3 |
| Pomadasys multimaculatum | 17 | | | | 25 | 0.3 |
| Leiognathus equula | 16 | | | | 25 | 0.2 |
| Pomadasys kakaan | 16 | | | | 25 | 0.2 |
| Valamugil seheli | | | 5 | | 25 | 0.2 |
| Oligolepis keiensis | | | 4 | | 25 | 0.1 |

| Reference Begg (1 | | Ramm et al. (1986) | Harrison et al. (2000) | Forbes and Demetriades (2009) | :y of nce | se nce |
|----------------------------|---|-----------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------|-------------------|
| Sampling date | 1980-1981 (6 surveys over wet and dry seasons) | 1986 (Aug) | 1998 (Oct) | 2008 (Jul, Oct) | Frequenc | Averag abundaı |
| Caffrogobius natalensis | | | 3 | | 25 | 0.1 |
| Caranx ignobilis | | | 3 | | 25 | 0.1 |
| Bothus pantherinus | 6 | | | | 25 | 0.1 |
| Glossogobius biocellatus | 5 | | | | 25 | 0.1 |
| Valamugil spp. | | | 2 | | 25 | 0.1 |
| Liza tricuspidens | | | 1 | | 25 | <0.05 |
| Gerres filamentosus | 2 | | | | 25 | <0.05 |
| Epinephelus andersoni (?) | 2 | | | | 25 | <0.05 |
| Eleotris fusca | 1 | | | | 25 | <0.05 |
| Croilia mossambica | 1 | | | | 25 | <0.05 |
| Favonigobius reichei | 1 | | | | 25 | <0.05 |
| Platycephalus indicus | 1 | | | | 25 | <0.05 |
| Antennarius straitus | 1 | | | | 25 | <0.05 |
| Himantura uarnak | 1 | | | | 25 | <0.05 |
| Pterois miles | 1 | | | | 25 | <0.05 |
| Estuarine resident | 35.9 | | 11.5 | 8.5 | 75 | 14.0 |
| Estuarine dependent marine | 48.7 | 41.8 | 76.4 | 89.4 | 100 | 64.1 |
| Marine straggler | 6.4 | 34.5 | 1.3 | 1.1 | 100 | 10.8 |
| Freshwater | 9.0 | 23.6 | 10.8 | 1.1 | 100 | 11.1 |
| Catadromous | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| Detritivore | 11.9 | 92.7 | 47.4 | 80.9 | 100 | 58.2 |
| Zooplanktivore | 17.3 | 1.8 | 16.1 | 8.0 | 100 | 10.8 |
| Zoobenthivore | 69.8 | 1.8 | 35.7 | 11.2 | 100 | 29.6 |
| Piscivore | 0.9 | 3.6 | 0.8 | | 75 | 1.3 |